

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

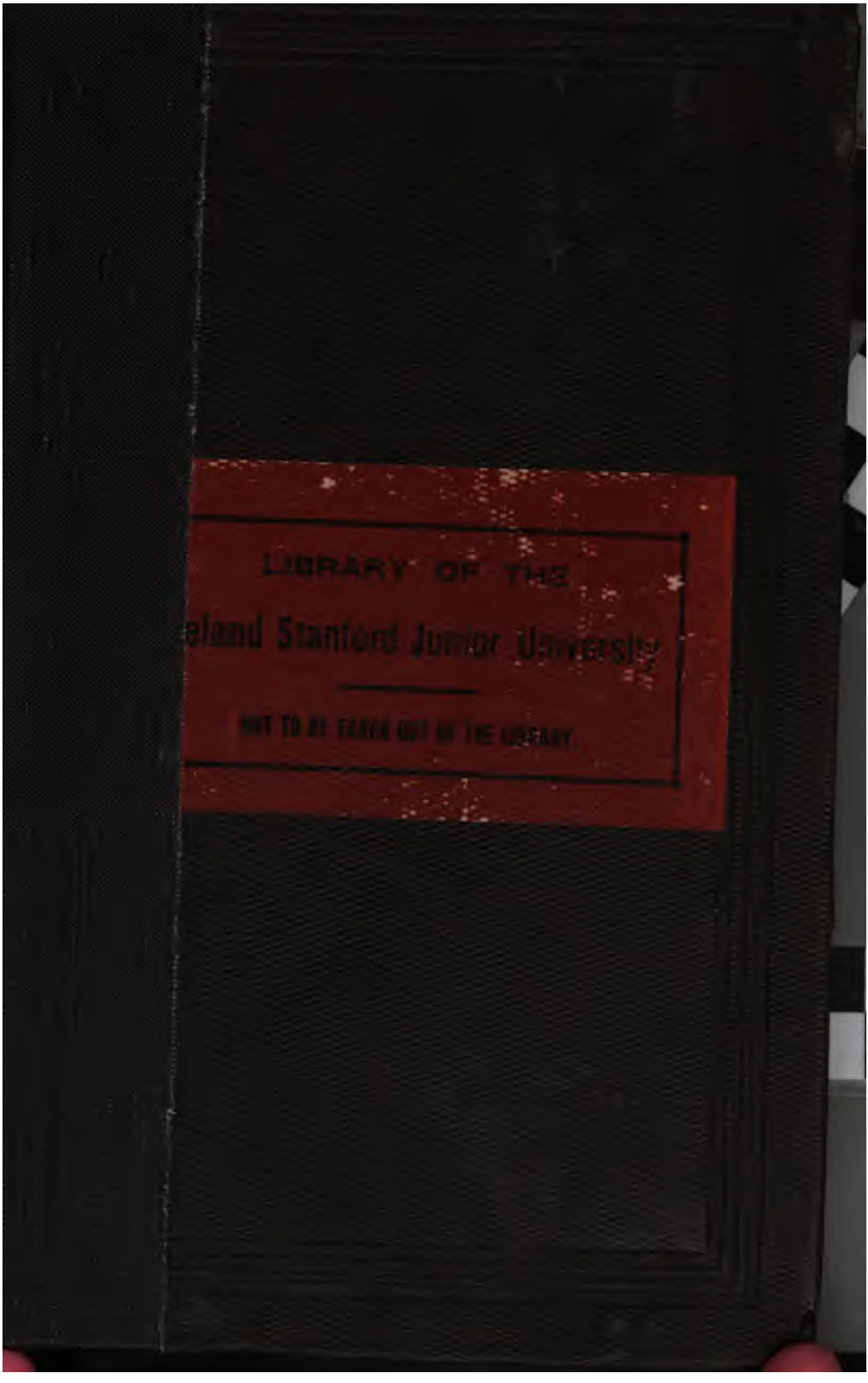
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

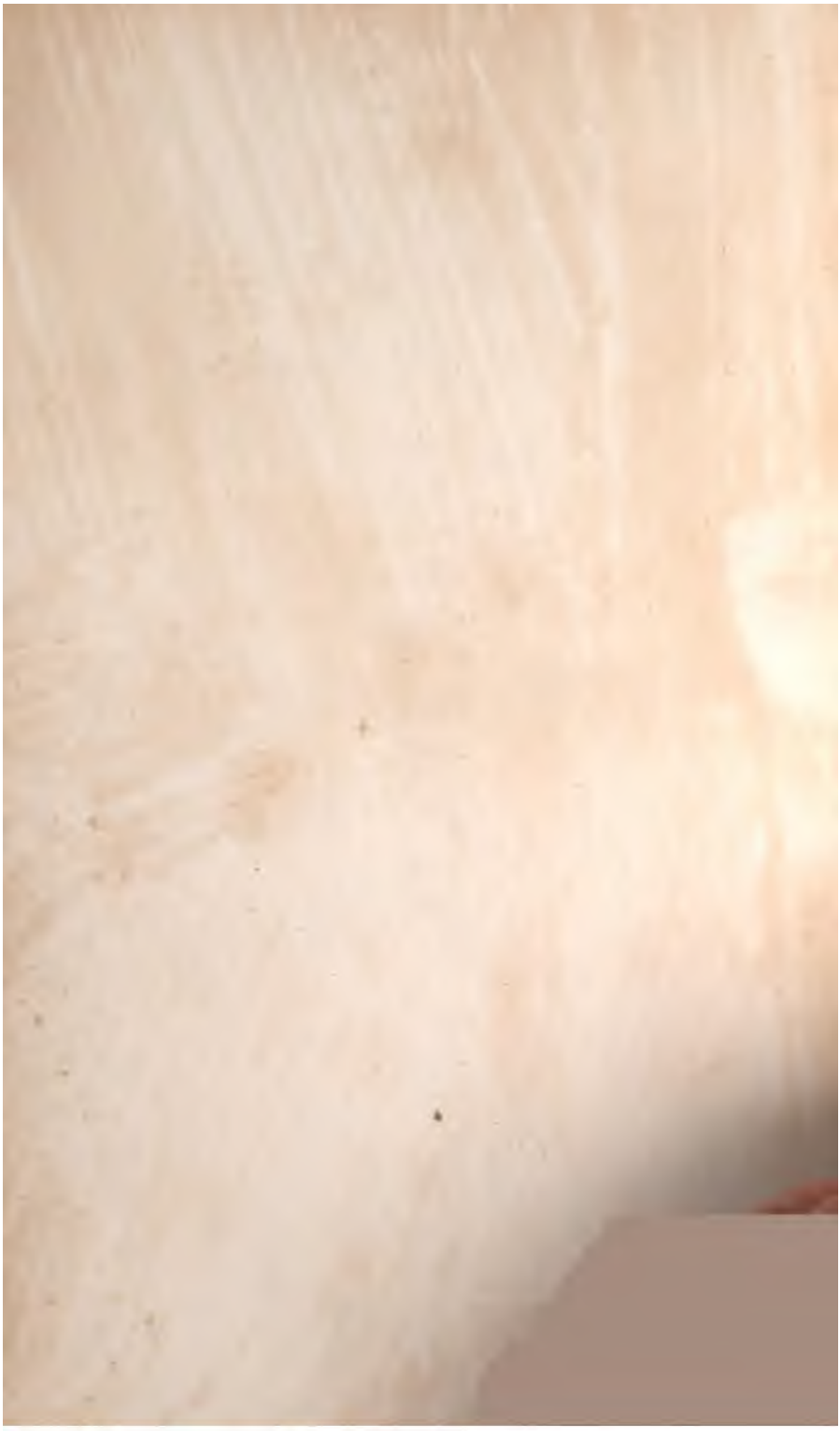
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`


LIBRARY OF THE
eland Stanford Junior University
NOT TO BE TAKEN OUT OF THE LIBRARY

E145
.47

The Hopkins Library
presented to the
Leland Stanford Junior University
by Timothy Hopkins.





A MANUAL

OF

THE PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICE

OF

ROAD-MAKING:

COMPRISING

THE LOCATION, CONSTRUCTION, AND IMPROVEMENT

OF

[illegible]

(COMMON, MACADAM, PAVED, PLANK, ETC.)

AND

RAIL-ROADS.

BY

W. M. GILLESPIE, A. M., C. E.

PROFESSOR OF CIVIL ENGINEERING IN UNION COLLEGE.

"Every judicious improvement in the establishment of Roads and bridges increases the value of land, enhances the price of commodities, and augments the public wealth." De Witt Clinton.

NEW YORK:

PUBLISHED BY A. S. BARNES & CO.

51 JOHN-STREET.

1847.

Recat

E145
.47

The Hopkins Library
presented to the
Leland Stanford Junior University
by Timothy Hopkins.

173
ib.
178
180
182

THEIR

188
189
ib.
191
193
ib.

PAGE

5. AS TO THEIR COST..... 65
Comparison of cost and revenue..... *ib.*
Amount of Traffic..... 66
Cost of its transportation..... *ib.*
Profit of improving the surface..... 67
" " lessening the length..... 68
" " avoiding a hill..... *ib.*
Consequent increase of travel..... 70

CHAPTER II.—THE LOCATION OF ROADS..... 72

1. ARRANGEMENT OF HILLS, VALLEYS AND WATER-COURSES..... 74
Line of greatest slope..... 75
Inferences from the water-courses..... 78

2. RECONNAISSANCE..... 81

3. SURVEY OF A LINE..... 86
Measurement of distances..... 87
" directions..... 90
" heights..... 93

4. MAPPING THE SURVEY..... 101
Plot of the distances and directions..... *ib.*
Profile of the distances and heights..... 103

5. ESTABLISHING THE GRADES..... 105

6. CALCULATING EXCAVATION AND EMBANKMENT 112
Preliminary arrangements..... 113
Sectio-Planography..... *ib.*
Tabular entries..... 115
Cubical contents..... 117
Balancing the excavation and embankment..... 118
Shrinkage..... *ib.*
Change of grade..... 119
Transverse balancing..... 122
Distances of Transport..... 123

7. ESTIMATE OF THE COST..... 124
Earthwork..... *ib.*
Wages..... *ib.*
Quality..... 125
Distance..... 127
Land, Bridges, &c..... 132

Page

8. FINAL LOCATION OF THE LINE 134
Rectification 135
Curves 137
Circular arcs 138
Parabolic arcs 143
Staking out the side-slopes 145

CHAPTER III.—CONSTRUCTION OF ROADS .. 147

1. EARTHWORK 149
Problems on removing earth ib.
Excavation 154
Loosening ib.
Scraper or scoop 155
Barrow wheeling 156
Carts, etc 158
Deep cuttings 159
Spoil banks 160
Side-slopes ib.
Tunnelling 161
Blasting ib.
Embankments 165
Formation of banks ib.
Protection of slopes 167
Swamps and bogs 168
Side-hills 169
Trimming and shaping 171

2. MECHANICAL STRUCTURES 173
Bridges ib.
Culverts and drains 178
Catchwaters, or Water-tables 180
Retaining Walls 182

CHAPTER IV.—IMPROVEMENT OF THEIR SURFACE 188

1. EARTH ROADS 189
How to improve them ib.
Effects of wheels on their surface 191

2. GRAVEL ROADS 193
Directions for their construction ib.

PAGE

3. BROKEN-STONE ROADS 194
McAdam roads *ib.*
Fundamental principles 195
Quality of the stone 196
Size of the broken stones 198
Breaking them 199
Thickness of the coating 200
Application of the materials 201
Rolling the new road 204
Keeping up the road 205
Repairing it 209
Telford roads 210
Specification *ib.*
Propriety of a pavement foundation 212
Foundation of concrete 215

4. PAVED ROADS 216
Pebble pavements *ib.*
Squared stone pavements 217
Foundations 218
Of sand *ib.*
Of broken stones 219
Of pebbles *ib.*
Of concrete *ib.*
Quality of stone 220
Size and shape 221
Arrangement 222
Manner of laying 223
Borders and curbs 224
Advantages 225
Paved and McAdam roads compared *ib.*
Roman roads 226

5. ROADS OF WOOD 228
Logs *ib.*
Charcoal 229
Plank 230
Blocks 233

PAGE

CHAPTER VI.—THE MANAGEMENT OF TOWN ROADS..... 313

The present Road-tax system..... 314
Its defects..... 315
New system proposed..... 317

APPENDIX.

CALCULATIONS OF EXCAVATION AND EMBANKMENT..... 321
1. By averaging end areas..... 322
Error in excess..... 323
2. By the middle areas..... 326
Error in defect..... 327
3. By the Prismoidal formula..... *ib.*
Proof of its correctness..... 328
Easier rules..... 329
4. By mean proportionals..... 332
5. Calculation of irregular cross-sections..... *ib.*
Their mean heights..... 335

A

MANUAL OF ROAD-MAKING.

INTRODUCTION.

THE ROADS of a country are accurate and certain tests of the degree of its civilization. Their construction is one of the first indications of the emergence of a people from the savage state; and their improvement keeps pace with the advances of the nation in numbers, wealth, industry, and science—of all which it is at once an element and an evidence.

Roads are the veins and arteries of the body politic, for through them flow the agricultural productions and the commercial supplies which are the life-blood of the state. Upon the sufficiency of their number, the propriety of their directions, and the unobstructedness of their courses, depend the ease and the rapidity with which the more distant portions of the system receive the nutriment which is essential to their life, health, and vigor, and without a copious supply of which the extremities must languish and die.

But roads belong to that unappreciated class of blessings, of which the value and importance are not fully felt, because of the very greatness of their advantages, which are so manifold and indispensable, as to have rendered their extent almost universal and their origin forgotten. Perhaps we will better appreciate them, if we endeavor to

imagine what would be our condition if none had ever been constructed.

Suppose, then, that a traveller had occasion to go from Boston to Albany, and that no road between the two places was yet in existence. In the first place, how would he find his way? Even if he knew that his general direction should be towards the setting sun, the sun would be often hidden by day, and the stars by night; and, there being no roads, there would be no engineers and no surveyor's compass. The moss upon the north side of the trees might be in some degree a guide to him, if he were skilled in woodcraft; but he would at last become so bewildered, that, like lost hunters on the prairies, he would begin to believe that the sun rose in the west, set in the east, and was due north at mid-day.

Allowing, however, that he was fortunate enough to retain the true direction, would he be able to follow it? In the forest he must force for himself a passage through the tangled underwood, and make long circuits around the fallen trees, which no axe-men have as yet cleared away. Through the swamp he must struggle amid the slippery and deceitful mud, for no road-maker has yet built the causeway. Over the mountain he must clamber only to again descend, for topographical science has not taught him how much he would gain by winding around its base. The rocky walls of precipices he must arduously climb, and perilously descend, for no engineer has as yet blasted a passage through them. Meeting a deep river, or even a mere mountain torrent, if he cannot ford or swim it, he must seek its head with many miles of added travel, to be doubled again by his return to his original direction. All this while, too, he can subsist only by precarious hunting; for, there being no roads, there would be no inns, and

he can scarcely carry himself along, much less a store of provisions.

Look now at the contrast, and at the ease, speed, and comfort with which the modern traveller flies from place to place upon that best of all roads, a railroad.

But the increase of personal comfort is only a petty item in estimating the importance of roads, even in despite of Dr. Johnson's exclamation, that life has no greater pleasure than being whirled over a good road in a post-chaise. More important is the consideration, that, in the absence of such facilities, the richest productions of nature waste on the spot of their growth. The luxuriant crops of our western prairies are sometimes left to decay on the ground, because there are no rapid and easy means of conveying them to a market. The rich mines in the northern part of the state of New York are comparatively valueless, because the roads among the mountains are so few and so bad, that the expense of the transportation of the metal would exceed its value. So, too, in Spain, it has been known after a succession of abundant harvests, that the wheat has actually been allowed to rot, because it would not repay the cost of carriage.* In that country, for similar reasons, sheep are killed for their fleece only, and the flesh is abandoned; as is likewise the case with cattle in Brazil, slaughtered merely for their hides.

Such are the effects of the almost total want of roads. Among those which do exist, the difference, as to ease, rapidity, and economy of transportation, caused by the various degrees of skill and labor bestowed upon them, is much greater than is usually imagined, particularly by farmers, whom they most concern.

* Edinburgh Review, lxv. 448.

PAGE

2. THE SUPERSTRUCTURE..... 269
Rails supported at intervals..... *ib.*
Their shape..... *ib.*
Their weight..... 271
The distances of their supports..... *ib.*
Their end joints..... 272
Their chairs..... 273
Stone blocks..... 275
Wooden cross-sleepers..... 276
Rails on continuous supports..... 277
Inclination of the rails..... 280
Elevation of the outer rail..... *ib.*
Sidings, crossings, &c..... 281
Single rail railroad..... 283

IV. THE MOTIVE POWERS OF RAIL-ROADS..... 284

1. HORSE POWER..... *ib.*
Table of power at different speeds..... *ib.*

2. STATIONARY ENGINES..... 285
A Broadway Railroad..... 286

3. LOCOMOTIVE ENGINES..... 288
History..... *ib.*
Principles..... 293
Speed and power..... 296
Working expenses..... 298
Safety of travelling..... 300
Signals..... 303

4. ATMOSPHERIC PRESSURE..... 306
History of its application..... *ib.*
Description of present system..... 307
Advantages..... 310

Page

CHAPTER VI.—THE MANAGEMENT OF TOWN ROADS..... 313

The present Road-tax system..... 314
Its defects..... 315
New system proposed..... 317

APPENDIX.

Calculations of Excavation and Embankment..... 321
1. By averaging end areas..... 322
Error in excess..... 323
2. By the middle areas..... 326
Error in defect..... 327
3. By the Prismoidal formula..... *ib.*
Proof of its correctness..... 328
Easier rules..... 329
4. By mean proportionals..... 332
5. Calculation of irregular cross-sections..... *ib.*
Their mean heights..... 335

A

MANUAL OF ROAD-MAKING.

INTRODUCTION.

The Roads of a country are accurate and certain tests of the degree of its civilization. Their construction is one of the first indications of the emergence of a people from the savage state; and their improvement keeps pace with the advances of the nation in numbers, wealth, industry, and science—of all which it is at once an element and an evidence.

Roads are the veins and arteries of the body politic, for through them flow the agricultural productions and the commercial supplies which are the life-blood of the state. Upon the sufficiency of their number, the propriety of their directions, and the unobstructedness of their courses, depend the ease and the rapidity with which the more distant portions of the system receive the nutriment which is essential to their life, health, and vigor, and without a copious supply of which the extremities must languish and die.

But roads belong to that unappreciated class of blessings, of which the value and importance are not fully felt, because of the very greatness of their advantages, which are so manifold and indispensable, as to have rendered their extent almost universal and their origin forgotten. Perhaps we will better appreciate them, if we endeavor to

imagine what would be our condition if none had ever been constructed.

Suppose, then, that a traveller had occasion to go from Boston to Albany, and that no road between the two places was yet in existence. In the first place, how would he find his way? Even if he knew that his general direction should be towards the setting sun, the sun would be often hidden by day, and the stars by night; and, there being no roads, there would be no engineers and no surveyor's compass. The moss upon the north side of the trees might be in some degree a guide to him, if he were skilled in woodcraft; but he would at last become so bewildered, that, like lost hunters on the prairies, he would begin to believe that the sun rose in the west, set in the east, and was due north at mid-day.

Allowing, however, that he was fortunate enough to retain the true direction, would he be able to follow it? In the forest he must force for himself a passage through the tangled underwood, and make long circuits around the fallen trees, which no axe-men have as yet cleared away. Through the swamp he must struggle amid the slippery and deceitful mud, for no road-maker has yet built the causeway. Over the mountain he must clamber only to again descend, for topographical science has not taught him how much he would gain by winding around its base. The rocky walls of precipices he must arduously climb, and perilously descend, for no engineer has as yet blasted a passage through them. Meeting a deep river, or even a mere mountain torrent, if he cannot ford or swim it, he must seek its head with many miles of added travel, to be doubled again by his return to his original direction. All this while, too, he can subsist only by precarious hunting; for, there being no roads, there would be no inns, and

he can scarcely carry himself along, much less a store of provisions.

Look now at the contrast, and at the ease, speed, and comfort with which the modern traveller flies from place to place upon that best of all roads, a railroad.

But the increase of personal comfort is only a petty item in estimating the importance of roads, even in despite of Dr. Johnson's exclamation, that life has no greater pleasure than being whirled over a good road in a post-chaise. More important is the consideration, that, in the absence of such facilities, the richest productions of nature waste on the spot of their growth. The luxuriant crops of our western prairies are sometimes left to decay on the ground, because there are no rapid and easy means of conveying them to a market. The rich mines in the northern part of the state of New York are comparatively valueless, because the roads among the mountains are so few and so bad, that the expense of the transportation of the metal would exceed its value. So, too, in Spain, it has been known after a succession of abundant harvests, that the wheat has actually been allowed to rot, because it would not repay the cost of carriage.* In that country, for similar reasons, sheep are killed for their fleece only, and the flesh is abandoned; as is likewise the case with cattle in Brazil, slaughtered merely for their hides.

Such are the effects of the almost total want of roads. Among those which do exist, the difference, as to ease, rapidity, and economy of transportation, caused by the various degrees of skill and labor bestowed upon them, is much greater than is usually imagined, particularly by farmers, whom they most concern.

* Edinburgh Review, lxv. 448.

One important difference lies in the *grades* or longitudinal slopes of a road. Suppose that a road rises a hundred feet in the distance of two thousand feet. Its ascending slope is then one in twenty, and (as will be hereafter proven) one-twentieth of the whole load drawn over it in one direction, must be actually *lifted up* this entire height of one hundred feet. But upon such a slope a horse can draw only *one half* as much as he can upon a level road, and two horses will be needed on such a road to do the usual work of one. If the road be intrusted to the care of a skilful engineer, and be made level by going round hills instead of over them, or in any other way, there will be a saving of one half of the former expense of carriage on it.

Another great difference in roads lies in the nature of their *surfaces*; one being hard and smooth, and another soft and uneven. On a well-made road of broken stone, a horse can draw *three times* as much as he can upon a gravel road. By making, then, such a road as the former (according to the instructions in Chapter IV.) in the place of the latter, the expenses of transportation will be reduced to one-third of their former amount, so that two-thirds will be completely saved, and two out of three of all the horses formerly employed can then be dispensed with.* If such an improvement can be made for a sum of money, the interest of which will be less than the total amount of the annual saving of labor, it will be true economy to make it, however great the original outlay; for the de-

* In the absence of such an improvement, when the Spanish government required a supply of grain to be transferred from Old Castile to Madrid, 30,000 horses and mules were necessary for the transportation of 480 tons of wheat. Upon a broken-stone road of the best sort, *one-hundredth* of that number could easily have done the work.

cision of all such questions depends on considerations of comparative profit. This part of the subject will be more minutely examined at the end of Chapter I., in considering "*What roads ought to be as to their cost.*"

The profits of such improvements are not confined to the proprietors of a road, (whether towns, or companies remunerated for these expenditures by tolls) but are shared by all who avail themselves of the increased facilities; consumers and producers, as well as road-owners. If wheat be worth in a city a dollar per bushel, and if it cost 25 cents to transport it thither from a certain farming district, it will there necessarily command only 75 cents. If now by improved roads the cost of carriage is reduced to 10 cents, the surplus 15 cents on each bushel is so much absolute gain to the community, balanced only by the cost of improving the road. Supposing that a toll of 5 cents will pay a fair dividend on this, there remains 10 cents per bushel to be divided between the producer and the consumer, enabling the former to sell his wheat at a higher price than before, while at the same time the latter obtains it at a less cost.

Agriculture is thus directly, and likewise indirectly, dependent in a great degree upon good roads for its success and rewards. *Directly*, as we have just seen, these roads carry the productions of the fields to the markets, and bring to them in return their bulky and weighty materials of fertilization, at a cost of labor which grows less and less as the roads become better. *Indirectly*, the cities and towns, whose dense population and manufacturing industry make them the best markets for farming produce, are enabled to grow and to extend themselves indefinitely by roads alone, which supply the place of rivers, to the banks of which these great towns would otherwise be ne-

cessarily confined.* While, therefore, it would be an inexcusable waste of money to construct a costly road to connect two small towns which had little intercourse, it would be equally wasteful, and is a much more frequent short-sightedness of economy, to leave unimproved and almost in a state of nature, the communications between a great city and the interior regions from which its daily sustenance is drawn, and into which its own manufactures are conveyed.

Some of the advantages thus to be attained, have been well summed up in a report of a committee of the House of Commons:

"By the improvement of our roads, every branch of our agricultural, commercial, and manufacturing industry would be materially benefited. Every article brought to market would be diminished in price; and the number of horses would be so much reduced that, by these and other retrenchments, the expense of FIVE MILLIONS [*pounds sterling*] would be ANNUALLY saved to the public. The expense of repairing roads, and the wear and tear of carriages and horses, would be essentially diminished; and thousands of acres, the produce of which is now wasted in feeding unnecessary horses, would be devoted to the production of food for man. In short, the public and private advantages which would result from effecting that great object, the improvement of our highways and turnpike roads, are incalculable; though, from their being spread over a wide surface, and available in various ways, such advantages will not be so apparent as those derived from other sources of improvement, of a more restricted and less general nature."

* McCulloch, Dictionary of Commerce.

The changes in the condition of a country which such improvements effect, are of the highest importance. There is as much truth as blundering in the famous couplet written by an enthusiastic admirer of the roads which Marshal Wade opened through the Scottish Highlands:

> "Oh, had you only seen these roads before they were made,
> You would lift up your eyes and bless Marshal Wade!"

His military road is said to have done more for the civilization of the Highlands than the preceding efforts of all the British monarchs. But the later roads under the more scientific direction of Telford, produced a change in the state of the people which is probably unparalleled in the history of any country for the same space of time. Large crops of wheat now cover former wastes; farmers, houses, and herds of cattle are now seen where was previously a desert; estates have increased sevenfold in value and annual returns; and the country has been advanced at least one hundred years. In Ireland similar effects have been produced, and the face of the country in some districts has been completely renovated. The enlarged labors of the public works, now undertaken in that country by the government, though commenced only for temporary relief, will not fail to produce great permanent benefits.

The moral results of such improvements are equally admirable. Telford testifies that in the Highlands they greatly changed for the better the habits of the great working class. Thus, too, when Oberlin wished to improve the spiritual condition of his rude flock, he began by bettering their physical state, and led out his whole people to open a road of communication between their secluded valley and the great world without. The wonderful moral and intellectual amelioration which ensued

was an unmistakeable tribute to the civilizing and elevating influence of good roads.

Among the most remarkable consequences of the improvement of roads, is the rapidly increasing proportion in which their benefits extend and radiate in every direction, as impartially and benignantly as the similarly diverging rays of the sun. Around every town or market-place we may conceive a number of concentric circles to be drawn, enclosing areas from any part of which certain kinds of produce may be profitably taken to the town; while from any point beyond each circumference, the expense of the carriage of the particular article would exceed its value. Thus the inner circle, at the centre of which is the town, may show the limit in every direction from beyond which perishable vegetables, or articles very bulky or heavy in proportion to their value, cannot be profitably brought to market; the next larger circle may show the limit of fruits; and so on. If now the roads are improved in any way, so as in any degree to lessen the expense of carriage, the radius of each circle is correspondingly increased, and the area of each is enlarged as the *square* of this ratio of increase. Thus, if the improvement enables a horse to draw twice as much or to travel twice as fast as he did before, each of the limiting circles is expanded outward to twice its former radius, and embraces *four* times its former area. If the rate of improvement be threefold, the increase of area is *ninefold*; and so on. All the produce, industry, and wealth, which by these improvements finds, for the first time, a market, is as it were a new creation.*

The number of passengers is governed by similar laws;

* Dr. Anderson.

and the increased facilities of a better road attract them from inferior ones, as the digging of a new and deep well often drains the water from all the shallow ones in its neighborhood. The distance to the right and left of the new road, from which it will attract passengers, admits of a mathematical investigation, which will be found at the end of Chapter I.; and the deductions of theory are amply corroborated by the observations of experience, and more than realized in the improvement of every old road and the opening of every new one; for not only is the former travel attracted from great distances in every direction, but a very considerable amount is created.

Supposing that by these improvements the average speed over a whole country be only doubled, the whole population of the country (to borrow a metaphor from an accomplished writer) would have advanced in mass, and placed their chairs twice as near to the fireside of their metropolis, and twice as near to each other. If the speed were again doubled, the process would be repeated; and so on. As distances were thus gradually annihilated, the whole surface of the country would be, as it were, contracted and condensed, till it was only one immense city; and yet, by one of the modern miracles of science wedded to art, every man's field would be found not only where it always was, but as large as ever it was, and even far larger, estimating its size by the increased profits of its productions. The more perfect the roads, the more rapidly would this result be attained, and therefore most quickly of all by railroads.

But however great the advantages of *railroads*, as to mere speed, and however precious to the hurrying traveller their triumphs over time and space, COMMON ROADS will always be incomparably more valuable to the community

at large. The distinguishing characteristic of a modern railroad, as compared with a "tram road," and that to which its peculiar power is chiefly due, is the projecting flanges of the wheels of its carriages, by which they are retained upon the rails. But this peculiarity, in an equal degree, lessens its advantages to the agricultural population; since the vehicles which are adapted to travel on railroads cannot be used on the common roads leading to them, nor in the ordinary labors of the farm; while on all other improved roads the same wagons, horses, and men, employed at one season in cultivating the ground, can also be profitably employed, in their otherwise idle moments, in conveying the produce to a market. For these reasons, even if a railroad came to every man's door, he could more economically use a good common road; but since, on the contrary, the expense of the construction of railroads must always restrict them to important lines of communication, (where, indeed, their value can scarcely be estimated too highly) in every other situation, the greatest good of the greatest number, and the most universal benefits with the fewest accompanying evils, will be most effectually secured, by improving (in accordance with the principles to be presently set forth) the people's highways—the common roads of the country.

In this analytical examination of the subject of ROAD-MAKING, it will be considered under the following general heads:

1. *What Roads ought to be.*
2. *Their Location.*
3. *Their Construction.*
4. *Improvement of their Surface.*

CHAPTER I.

WHAT ROADS OUGHT TO BE.

"The art of Road-making must essentially depend for its success on its being exercised in conformity with certain general principles; and their justness should be rendered so clear and self-evident as not to admit of any controversy."

SIR HENRY PARNELL.

RAPIDITY, safety, and economy of carriage are the objects of roads. They should therefore be so located and constructed as to enable burdens, of goods and of passengers, to be transported from one place to another, in the least possible time, with the least possible labor, and, consequently, with the least possible expense.

To attain these important ends, a road should fulfil certain conditions, which the nature of the country over which it passes, and other circumstances, may render impossible to unite and reconcile in one combination; but to the union of which we should endeavor to approximate as nearly as possible in forming an actual road upon the model of this ideally perfect one. We will therefore investigate—

WHAT ROADS OUGHT TO BE,

1. *As to their direction.*
2. *As to their slopes.*
3. *As to their cross-section.*
4. *As to their surface.*
5. *As to their cost.*

1. WHAT ROADS OUGHT TO BE, AS TO THEIR DIRECTION.

IMPORTANCE OF STRAIGHTNESS.

Every road, other things being equal, should be *perfectly straight*, so that its length, and, therefore, the time and labor expended in travelling upon it, should be the least possible; *i. e.*, its *alignemens*, or directions, departing from one extremity of it, should constantly tend towards the other.

Any unnecessary excess of length causes a constant threefold waste; firstly, of the interest of the capital expended in making that unnecessary portion; secondly, of the ever-recurring expense of repairing it; and, thirdly, of the time and labor employed in travelling over it. It will therefore be good economy to expend, in making topographical examinations for the purpose of shortening the road, any amount less than not only that sum which the distance thus saved would have cost, but, in addition, that principal which corresponds to the annual cost of the repairs and of the labor of draught which would have been wasted upon this unnecessary length.

ADVANTAGES OF CURVING.

The importance of making the road as *level* as possible will be explained in the next section, and as a road can in few cases be at the same time straight and level, these two requirements will often conflict. In such cases, *straightness should always be sacrificed to obtain a level, or to make the road less steep.* This is one of the most important principles to be observed in laying out or improving a road, and it is the one most often violated.

A *straight* road over an uneven and hilly country may, at first view, when merely seen upon the map, be pro-

nounced to be a *bad* road; for the straightness must have been obtained either by submitting to steep slopes in ascending the hills and descending into the valleys, or these natural obstacles must have been overcome by incurring a great and unnecessary expense in making deep cuttings and fillings.

A good road should wind around these hills instead of running over them, and this it may often do without at all increasing its length. For if a hemisphere (such as half a bullet) be placed so as to rest upon its plane base, the halves of great circles which join two opposite points of this base are all equal, whether they pass horizontally or vertically. Or let an egg be laid upon a table, and it will be seen that if a level line be traced upon it from one end to the other, it will be no longer than the line traced between the same points, but passing over the top. Precisely so may the curving road around a hill be often no longer than the straight one over it; for the latter road is straight only with reference to the vertical plane which passes through it, and is curved with reference to a horizontal plane; while the former level road, though curved as to the vertical plane, is straight as to a horizontal one. Both lines thus curve, and we call the latter one straight in preference, only because its vertical curvature is less apparent to our eyes.

The difference in length between a straight road and one which is slightly curved is very small. If a road between two places ten miles apart were made to curve so that the eye could nowhere see farther than a quarter of a mile of it at once, its length would exceed that of a perfectly straight road between the same points by only about one hundred and fifty yards.*

* Sganzin, p. 89.

But even if the level and curved road were very much longer than the straight and steep one, it would almost always be better to adopt the former; for on it a horse could safely and rapidly draw his full load, while on the other he could carry only part of his load up the hill, and must diminish his speed in descending it. As a general rule, the horizontal length of a road may be advantageously increased, to avoid an ascent, by at least twenty times the perpendicular height which is to be thus saved; that is, to escape a hill a hundred feet high, it would be proper for the road to make such a circuit as would increase its length two thousand feet.* The mathematical axiom that "a straight line is the shortest distance between two points," is thus seen to be an unsafe guide in road-making, and less appropriate than the paradoxical proverb that "the longest way around is the shortest way home."

The gently curving road, besides its substantial advantages, is also much more pleasant to the traveller upon it; for he is not fatigued by the tedious prospect of a long straight stretch of road to be traversed, and is met at each curve by a constantly varied view.

It cannot be too strongly impressed upon a road-maker, that straightness is *not* the highest characteristic of a good road. As says Coleridge—

> "*Straight* forward goes
> The lightning's flash, and *straight* the fearful path
> Of the cannon-ball."

But in striking contrast he adds—

> "The ROAD the human being travels,
> That on which blessing comes and goes, doth follow
> The river's course, the valley's playful *windings*,
> *Curves* round the cornfield and the hill of vines."†

* This proportion depends on the degree of friction assumed, a subject to be investigated in a following section.

† The Piccolomini. i. 4.

The passion for straightness is the great fault in the location of most roads in this country, which too often remind us how

> "The king of France, with forty thousand men,
> Marched *up a hill*, and then—marched *down again*;"

so generally do they clamber over hills which they could so much more easily have gone around; as if their makers, like Marshal Wade, had "formed the heroic determination of pursuing straight lines, and of defying nature and wheel-carriages both, at one valiant effort of courage and of science."

One reason of this is, that the houses of the first settlers were usually placed on hill-tops, (to escape the poisonous miasmata of the undrained swamps, and to detect the approach of the hostile savages) and that the first roads necessarily ran from house to house. Our error consists in continuing to follow these primitive roads with our great thoroughfares. These original paths were also traversed only by men, and therefore very properly followed the shortest though steepest route. Tracks for pack-horses came next, and a considerable degree of steepness is admissible in them also. Wheeled carriages were finally introduced and brought into use upon the same tracks, though too steep for true economy of labor with them—the standard of slope being very different for foot, horse, and carriage roads. Before sufficient attention was paid to the subject, the lands on either side of the road had been fenced off and appropriated by individuals, and thus the random tracks became the legal highways.

The evil is now perpetuated by the unwillingness of farmers to allow a road to run through their farms in a winding line. They attach more importance to the square-

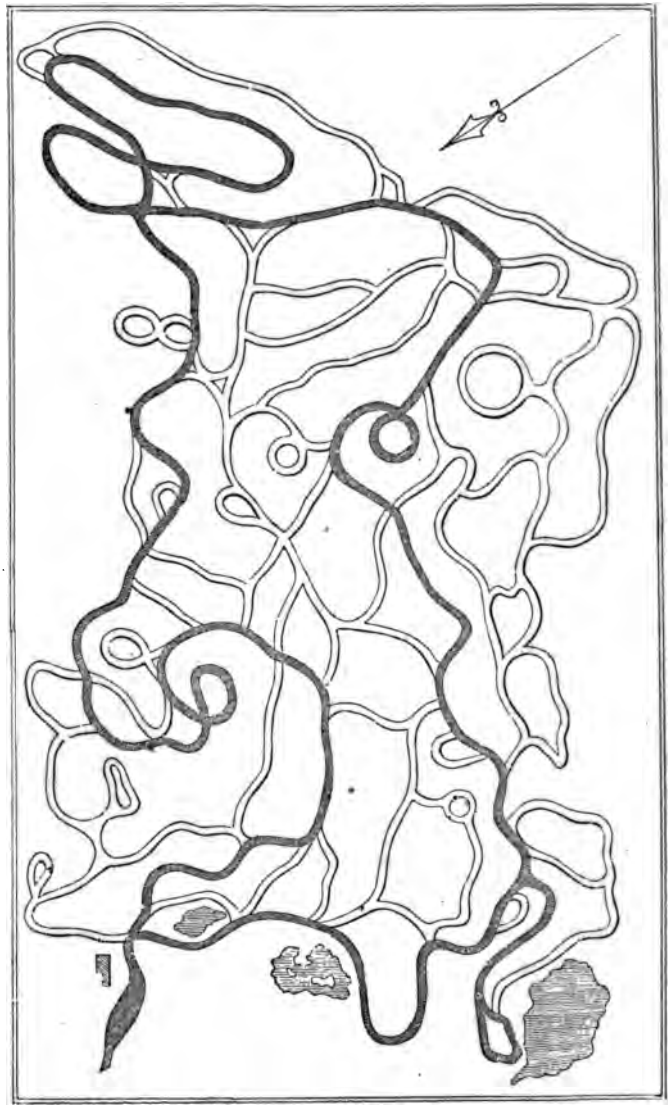
ness of their fields than to the improvement of the lines of their roads—not being aware how much more labor is wasted by them in travelling over these steep roads, than there would be in cultivating an awkward corner of a field.

This feeling is seen carried to excess in some of the new states of the West, in which the roads now run along "section-lines," and as these sections are all squares, with sides directed towards the cardinal points of the compass, a person wishing to cross the country in any other direction than North, South, East or West, must do so in rectangular zigzags.

PLEASURE DRIVES.

In roads designed solely for pleasure drives, such as those laid out by landscape gardeners in parks, cemeteries, &c., curvature is the rule, and straightness only the exception. In them the object is to wind as much as possible, in Hogarth's "line of grace," so as to obtain the greatest development of length which the area of the ground will permit, but at the same time never to appear to turn for the mere sake of curving. Some reason for the windings must always be suggested, such as a clump of trees, a rise of ground, a good point of view, or any object which may conceal the artifice employed. The visiter must be deceived into the belief that he is travelling over a large area, while he is truly only retracing his steps and constantly doubling upon his track; but he must do it unconsciously, or at least without knowing the precise manner in which the pleasant deception is effected. *Ars est celare artem.*

The map on the opposite page, representing the roads and paths in Greenwood Cemetery, will somewhat illustrate this principle.

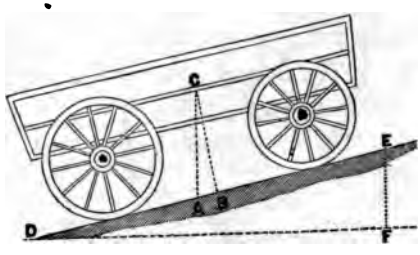


2. WHAT ROADS OUGHT TO BE AS TO THEIR SLOPES.

LOSS OF POWER ON INCLINATIONS.

Every road should be *perfectly level.* If it be not, a large portion of the strength of the horses which travel it will be expended in raising the load up the ascent. When a weight is drawn up an inclined plane, the resistance of the force of gravity, or the weight to be overcome, is such a part of the whole weight, as the height of the plane is of its length If, then, a road rises one foot in every twenty of its length, a horse drawing up it a load of one ton is compelled to actually lift up one-twentieth of the whole weight, *i. e.*, one hundred pounds, through the whole height of the ascent, besides overcoming the friction of the entire load.

Fig. 2.



Let DE represent the inclined surface of a road upon which rests a wagon, the centre of gravity of which is supposed to be at C. Draw CA perpendicular to the horizon, and CB perpendicular to the surface of the hill. Let CA represent the force of gravity, or the weight of the wagon and its load. It is equivalent, in magnitude and direction, to its two rectangular component forces, CB and BA. CB will then represent the force with which the wagon presses on the surface of the road, and AB the resisting force of gravity, *i. e.*, the force (inde-

pendent of friction) which resists the ascent of the wagon, or which tends to drag it down hill.

To find the amount of this force, from the two similar triangles, ABC and DEF, we get the proportion

$$CA : AB :: DE : EF.$$

Representing the *length* of the plane by l, its *height* by h, and the *weight* of the wagon and load by W, this proportion becomes

$$W : AB :: l : h,$$

whence $AB = W\frac{h}{l}$; that is, the resistance of gravity due to the inclination, is equal to the whole weight, multiplied by the height of the plane and divided by its length. If the inclination be one in twenty, then this resistance is equal to $\frac{1}{20}$ W.

In this investigation, we have neglected three trifling sources of error: arising from part of the weight being thrown from the front axles to the hind ones, in consequence of the inclination of the traces; from the diminution of the pressure of the weight, owing to its standing on an inclined surface; and from the hind wheels bearing more than half of the pressure, in consequence of the line of gravity falling nearer them.

The results of experiments fully confirm the deductions of theory as to the great increase of draught upon inclinations. The following table exhibits the force required (according to Sir Henry Parnell) to draw a stage coach over parts of the same road, having different degrees of inclination:

Inclination.	FORCE OF DRAUGHT REQUIRED.		
	At 6 miles per hour.	At 8 miles per hour.	At 10 miles per hour.
1 in 20	268	296	318
1 in 26	213	219	225
1 in 30	165	196	200
1 in 40	160	166	172
1 in 600	111	120	128

Putting into a different form the results of these and other experiments, we establish the following *data:*

Calling the load which a horse can draw on a level, 1.00, on a rise of 1 in 100 a horse can draw only .90*

"	1 in	50	"	"	.81*
"	1 in	44	"	"	.75‡
"	1 in	40	"	"	.72†
"	1 in	30	"	"	.64†
"	1 in	26	"	"	.54†
"	1 in	24	"	"	.50‡
"	1 in	20	"	"	.40†
"	1 in	10	"	"	.25*

In round numbers, upon a slope of 1 in 44, or 120 feet to the mile, a horse can draw only three-quarters as much as he can upon a level; on a slope of 1 in 24, or 220 feet to the mile, he can draw only half as much; and on a slope of 1 in 10, or 528 feet to the mile, only one quarter as much.

This ratio will, however, vary greatly with the nature and condition of the road; for, although the actual resistance of gravity is always *absolutely* the same upon the same inclination, whether the road be rough or smooth, yet it is *relatively* less upon a rough road, and does not form so large a proportional share of the whole resistance.

Thus, if the friction upon a road were such as to require, upon a level, a force of draught equal to $\frac{1}{40}$ of the load, the total force required upon an ascent of 1 in 20, would be $\frac{1}{40}+\frac{1}{20}=\frac{3}{40}$. Here, then, the resistance of gravity is two-thirds of the whole.

If the road be less perfect in its surface, so that its friction

* *Gayffier.* Experiments on a French road.

† *Parnell.* Experiments on an English road at average of the three velocities.

‡ Interpolations.

$= \frac{1}{20}$, the total force upon the ascent will be $\frac{1}{20} + \frac{1}{20}$; and here, then, the resistance of gravity is one-half of the whole.

If the friction increase to $\frac{1}{10}$, the total resistance is $\frac{1}{10} + \frac{1}{20} = \frac{3}{20}$; and here, gravity is only one-third of the whole.

We thus see that on a rough road, with great friction, any inclination forms a much smaller part of the resistance than does the same inclination on a smooth road, on which it is much more severely felt, and proportionally more injurious; as the gaps and imperfections which would not sensibly impair the value of a common knife, would render a fine razor completely useless.

The loss of power on inclinations is indeed even greater than these considerations show; for, besides the increase of draught caused by gravity, the power of the horse to overcome it is much diminished upon an ascent, and in even a greater ratio than that of man, owing to its anatomical formation and its great weight. Though a horse, on a level, is as strong as five men, yet on a steep hill it is less strong than three; for three men, carrying each 100 lbs., will ascend faster than a horse with 300 lbs.*

Inclinations being always thus injurious, are particularly so, where a single steep slope occurs on a long line of road which is comparatively level. It is, in that case, especially important to avoid or to lessen this slope, since the load carried over the whole road, even the level portions of it, must be reduced to what can be carried up the ascent. Thus, if a long slope of 1 in 24 occurs on a level road, as a horse can draw up it only one half of his full load, he can carry over the level parts of the road only half as much as he could and should draw thereon.

This evil is sometimes partially remedied by putting on a full load and adding extra horses at the foot of the steep

* *Emerson.* Mechanics.

slope. Oxen are thus employed to assist carriages up the high hills, on the summits of which, for safety in time of war, the Etruscans built their cities of Perugia, Cortona, &c. But this is an inconvenient, as well as expensive system, and the truest economy is, to cut down, or to go around such acclivities, whenever this is possible.*

The bad effects of this steepness are especially felt in winter, when ice covers the road, for the slippery surface causes danger in descending, as well as increased labor in ascending. The water of rains, also, runs down the road and gullies it out, destroying its surface, and causing a constant expense for repairs, oftentimes great enough to pay for a permanent improvement.

The loss of power on inclinations being so great as has been shown, it follows that it is very important never to allow a road to ascend or descend a single foot more than is absolutely unavoidable. If a hill is to be ascended, the road up it should nowhere have even the smallest fall or descent, for that would make two hills instead of one; but it should be so located and have such cuttings and fillings, as will secure a gradual and uninterrupted ascent the whole way.

In this point engineering skill can make wonderful improvements. Thus, an old road in Anglesea, laid out in violation of this rule, rose and fell between its extremities, 24 miles apart, a total perpendicular amount of 3,540 feet; while a new road laid out by Telford between the same points, rose and fell only 2,257 feet; so that 1,283 feet of perpendicular height is now done away with, which every horse passing over the road had previously been obliged to ascend and descend with its load. The new road is, besides, more than two miles shorter. Such is

* In Chapter IV., under the head of "Roads with Trackways," will be described a valuable palliation of the evils of steep ascents in cases where they cannot be avoided.

one of the results of the labors of a skilful road-maker, and many such improvements might be made in our American roads.

UNDULATING ROADS.

There is a popular theory that a gently undulating road is less fatiguing to horses than one which is perfectly level. It is said that the alternations of ascent, descent, and levels, call into play different muscles, allowing some to rest while the others are exerted, and thus relieving each in turn.

Plausible as this speculation appears at first glance, it will be found on examination to be untrue, both mechanically and physiologically; for, considering it in the former point of view, it is apparent that new ascents are formed which offer resistances not compensated by the descents; and in the latter, we find that it is contradicted by the structure of the horse. The question was submitted by Mr. Stevenson* to Dr. John Barclay of Edinburgh, "no less eminent for his knowledge, than successful as a teacher of the science of comparative anatomy," and he made the following reply:—"My acquaintance with the muscles by no means enables me to explain how a horse should be more fatigued by travelling on a road uniformly level, than by travelling over a like space upon one that crosses heights and hollows; but it is demonstrably *a false idea*, that muscles can alternately rest and come into motion in cases of this kind. Much is to be ascribed to prejudice originating with the man, continually in quest of variety, rather than with the horse, who, consulting only his own ease, seems quite unconscious of Hogarth's Line of Beauty."

Since this doctrine is thus seen to be a mere popular

* Report on the Edinburgh Railway.

error, it should be utterly rejected, not only because false in itself, but still more because it encourages the making of undulating roads, and thus increases the labor and cost of carriage upon them.

GREATEST ALLOWABLE SLOPE.

A perfectly level road is thus seen to be a most desirable object; but as it can seldom be completely attained, we must next investigate the limits to which the slopes of a road should be reduced if possible, and determine what is the steepest allowable or *maximum* slope.

This depends on two different considerations, according as the slope is viewed as a descent or as an ascent, each of which it alternately becomes, according to the direction of the travel.

Viewed as a *descent*, it chiefly concerns the safety of rapid travelling, and applies especially to great public roads.

Viewed as an *ascent*, it chiefly concerns the draught of heavy loads, and relates particularly to routes for agricultural and other heavy transportation.

MAXIMUM SLOPE, CONSIDERED AS A DESCENT.

The slope should be so gentle, that when a heavy vehicle is descending, its gravity shall not overcome its friction so far as to permit it to press upon the horses. This limiting slope corresponds to the "angle of repose" of mechanical science; *i. e.*, the angle made with the horizon by the steepest plane down which a body will not slide of its own accord, its gravity just balancing its friction, so that the least increase of slope would overpower the resistance of the friction, and make the body descend. This "angle of repose" should therefore be the limit of

the slope of a road, for on such an inclination a vehicle once set in motion would descend with uniform, unaccelerated velocity. This angle varies with the smoothness and hardness of the road, and also with the degree of friction of the axles of the carriage. On the very best class of broken-stone roads, kept in good order, and with a good carriage, it is considered by Sir Henry Parnell, from his experiments, to be 1 in 35, (or 151 feet to the mile) which should therefore be the maximum slope upon the best roads.* On such a slope a coach may be driven down, with perfect safety and complete control, at the speed of twelve miles per hour.

If the inclination be steeper than this, the danger of the descent is greatly increased, and the speed must be lessened. If it be so steep that a carriage cannot be safely driven down at a greater speed than four miles per hour, on every mile of such a slope there will be a loss of ten minutes of time, equivalent to two miles upon a level. To avoid such an inclination, a road-maker would therefore be justified, by considerations of time-saving, in adopting a level route three times as long as the steep one.

When inclinations are reduced to this limit of 1 in 35, there is little loss of power, compared with a perfect level, in either direction of the travel; for the increased labor of ascending is compensated in a great degree by the increased ease of descending, while on a steeper slope this advantage is nullified by the necessity of the horses holding back the carriage to resist the excess of the force of gravity.

* On such roads Dr. Lardner considers the angle of repose to be as small as 1 in 40; while on roads not well freed from mud and dust, the friction increases the angle to 1 in 30; and on an inferior class of roads it is 1 in 20, or even steeper.

MAXIMUM SLOPE, CONSIDERED AS AN ASCENT.

Suppose that a road is to be carried over a hill, which rises 100 feet in a horizontal distance of 500 feet, (*i. e.*, 1 in 5) and which cannot be avoided by any horizontal circuit within the limits of distance indicated on page 28. The question which presents itself is, how steep can the slope of a road up the side of this hill be most advantageously laid out, since, by adopting a zigzag line, the road may be made as long and therefore as gentle in the ascent as may be desired? The shortest line would run straight up the face of the hill, and this line would give the least amount of labor; but then this labor for horses would be impossible: and even if possible, the horses could not draw up the whole load which they had been drawing on the other parts of the road, nor could they descend it with safety. But, on the other hand, the road should approach this shortest line as nearly as other considerations will permit, since, if it should zigzag excessively for the purpose of lessening the steepness, it would be so long as to increase unnecessarily its cost and the time and labor of travel upon it. A medium and compromise between these two evils must therefore be found. What shall it be?

Supposing the load of a horse on the level portions of the road to be as much as he can regularly and constantly draw, his power of drawing it up an ascent will depend upon how much *extra* exertion he is capable of putting forth. This is not very accurately ascertained or defined, and depends very much on the length of the ascent, but may be assumed at double his usual exertion.* Now a horse drawing a load on a level road of the best character,

* Gayffier, p. 9.

such as has been previously considered, is obliged by the resistance of the friction to exercise against his collar a pressure of about one thirty-fifth of the load. If he can just double this exertion, he can lift one thirty-fifth more, and the slope which would force him to lift that proportion would be (as was shown on page 32) one of 1 in 35. On this slope he would therefore be compelled to double his ordinary exertion, and on this supposition it would be the maximum slope allowable, considered as an ascent.

These two methods of determining the maximum slope (by considering it as an ascent and as a descent) are entirely independent of each other.* If they give different results, the smallest one, or the least slope obtained, must be adopted; for, if it be disadvantageous to employ a slope steeper than 1 in 35, it must *à fortiori* be still more so, to employ one steeper than 1 in 30, or 1 in 20; though even greater slopes are too often met with.

Upon most of our American roads the resistance of friction would be found to be nearer $\frac{1}{2\frac{1}{0}}$ than $\frac{1}{3\frac{1}{5}}$, and 1 in 20 would therefore be their maximum slope with their present condition of surface. But as it is to be hoped that in this respect they will, before long, be greatly improved, in which case they would demand more and more gentle slopes, we should anticipate this desirable consummation, by giving in advance to all new lines of road at least, if not to the faulty old ones, *slopes not exceeding* 1 *in* 30, which seems to be a just medium.

* They give identical results in this case, only because the extra exertion happened to be taken as doubled. Suppose it to be tripled. The horse can lift $\frac{2}{3\frac{1}{5}}$ more, which corresponds to a slope of 1 in 17½. Horses can indeed for a short time exercise a tension of *six* times the usual amount, but the above assumption of double is more dependable, though it cannot be fixed with the precision which is desirable.

The *maximum* established by *L'administration des Ponts et Chaussées*, the French government board of engineers of roads and bridges, is 1 in 20. This, however, was fixed at a time when the usual surface of roads was much inferior to its present condition.

The great Holyhead road, made by Telford through the very mountainous district of North Wales, has 1 in 30 for its maximum, except in two cases, (one of 1 in 22, and a very short one of 1 in 17) and in them the surface of the road was made peculiarly smooth and hard, so that no difficulty is felt by loaded vehicles in ascending. On the old line of road, the inclinations had been sometimes as great as 1 in 6, 1 in 7, &c.

On the great Alpine road over the Simplon pass, (which rises to a height of a mile and a quarter above the level of the sea) the slopes average 1 in 22 on the Italian side, and 1 in 17 on the Swiss side, and in one case only become as steep as 1 in 13.

In the state of New York several turnpike companies are limited by law to a maximum slope of "eighteen inches to a rod," *i. e.* 1 in 11. But this limit ought not to be even approached in practice.

On our "National" or "Cumberland" road the slopes in many places are much too great, and its superintendent, Capt. Wever, writes* that "if the road had been very considerably elongated in order to effect a graduation at angles not exceeding three degrees, or 1 in 19, (and for the maximum, two degrees, or 1 in 29, would be better) the road could be travelled in as short a space of time as it now is, and the power used could move double the burden it now can; thus rendering the road, for commercial purposes, doubly advantageous."

If the ascent be one of great length, it will be advantageous to make steepest the lowest portion of it, upon which the horses come with their full strength, and to

* Report to United States Chief Engineer, 1828.

make the slopes gentler towards the summit of the ascent, to correspond to the continually decreasing strength of the fatigued horses.

MINIMUM SLOPE.

A true level has been thus far considered to be a most desirable attribute, and one to be earnestly sought for, in establishing a perfect road. This principle must be qualified, however, by the announcement that there is a *minimum*, or least allowable slope, which the road must not fall short of, as well as a *maximum* one, which it must not exceed. If the road were perfectly level in its longitudinal direction, its surface could not be kept free from water without giving it so great a rise in its middle as would expose vehicles to the danger of overturning. But when a road has a proper slope in the direction of its length, not only do the side-ditches readily discharge the water which falls into them, but every wheel-track that is made, becomes also a channel to carry off the water.

The *minimum* slope (flatter than which the road should not be) is assumed by an experienced English engineer to be one in eighty, or 66 feet to the mile. The minimum established in France by the *Corps des Ponts et Chaussées* is .008, or one in a hundred and twenty-five, or 42 feet to the mile. An angle of one-half a degree is often named in this connection; it equals one in a hundred and fifteen. In a perfectly level country the road should be artificially formed into gentle undulations approximating to the minimum limit.

Finally, then, we arrive at this conclusion, that the longitudinal slopes of a road should be kept, if possible, between 1 *in* 30 *and* 1 *in* 125, *never steeper than the former, nor nearer to a level than the latter.*

TABLES OF INCLINATIONS.

There being three different methods of specifying degrees of inclination, (viz. by the angle made with the horizon, by the proportion between the ascent and the horizontal distance, and by the ascent per mile) it is frequently desirable to compare the different expressions. The following tables show the values which correspond to each other.

Angles.	Inclinations.	Feet per mile.
$\frac{1}{2}°$	1 in 115	46
$\frac{3}{4}°$	1 in 76	69
1 °	1 in. 57	92
$1\frac{1}{2}°$	1 in 38	138
2 °	1 in 29	184
$2\frac{1}{2}°$	1 in 23	231
3 °	1 in 19	277
4 °	1 in 14	369
5 °	1 in 11	462

Inclinations.	Angles.	Feet per mile.
1 in 10	5° 43′	528
1 in 13	4° 24′	406
1 in 15	3° 49′	352
1 in 20	2° 52′	264
1 in 25	2° 18′	211
1 in 30	1° 55′	176
1 in 35	1° 38′	151
1 in 40	1° 26′	132
1 in 45	1° 16′	117
1 in 50	1° 9′	106
1 in 100	0° 35′	53
1 in 125	0° 28′	42

3. WHAT ROADS OUGHT TO BE AS TO THEIR CROSS-SECTION.

The *cross-section* of a road is the view which it would present if cut through at right angles to its length, one of the portions being removed. It comprises the following subjects of investigation:

1. *The width of the road.*
2. *The shape of the road-bed.*
3. *Foot-paths, &c.*
4. *Ditches.*
5. *The side-slopes of the cuttings and fillings.*

Fig. 3.



WIDTH.

The proper width for a road depends, of course, upon its importance, and the amount of travel upon it. Its *minimum* is about one rod, or 16½ feet, sufficient to enable two vehicles to pass each other with ease. For ordinary town roads a good width is from 20 to 25 feet. A width of 30 feet is fully sufficient for any road, except one which forms the approach to a very populous city.

Any unnecessary width (such as is often adopted in a spirit of public ostentation) is injurious, not only from its waste of land, but from its increase of the labor and cost of keeping the road in repair; each rod in width adding two acres per mile to the area covered by the road.

In the state of New York, by the revised statutes, "All public roads, to be laid out by the commissioners of highways of any town, shall not be less than *three rods* wide."

This is to be the width between fences; and no more

of it need be worked, or formed into a surface for travelling upon, than is deemed necessary.

The same laws declare, "It shall be the duty of the commissioners of highways to order the overseers of highways to open all roads to the width of *two rods at least*, which they shall judge to have been used as public highways for twenty years."

It is also ordered that "all private roads shall not be more than three rods wide."

Turnpike-roads are obliged by the statute to be "laid out not less than *four rods* wide," and "*twenty-two feet* of such width to be bedded with stone," &c. When a precipitous locality renders the full width impracticable, "*twenty-two feet*" is the minimum width permitted.

Where a road ascends a steep hill-side by zigzags, it should be wider on the curves connecting the straight portions. The width of the roadway may be increased about one-fourth, when the angle between the straight portions of the zigzags is from 120° to 90°; and the increase should be nearly one-half, when the angle is from 90° to 60°.*

The *Roman* military roads had their width established, by the laws of the Twelve Tables, at twelve feet when straight, and sixteen when crooked; barely sufficient for the army, baggage, and military machines.

The *French* engineers make four different classes of roads.† The first class comprises such as pass from the capital of one country to that of another. Their width is 66 feet, of which 22 in the middle are stoned or paved.

Those of the second class pass from the metropolis of a country to its other great cities. Their width is 52 feet, of which 20 in the middle are stoned.

Those of the third class connect large towns with each other

* Mahan, p. 282. † Gayffier, p. 90.

and with first-class roads. Their width is 33 feet, with 16 feet in the middle stoned.

The fourth class contains common town roads. Their width is 26 feet, with the same middle causeway as the last.

In *England*, the prescribed width for turnpike-roads at the approach to populous towns is 60 feet. The limits of by-roads are, for carriage-roads, 20 feet; for horse-roads, 8 feet; and for foot-paths, 6½ feet.*

Telford's Holyhead road, a model road for a hilly country, has the following width in the clear within the fences: 32 feet on flat ground; 28 feet when there are side-cuttings less than three feet deep; and 22 feet along steep ground and precipices.

The *United States National* or Cumberland road has 80 feet in width cleared, but the road itself is only 30 feet.

The broken-stone road between Albany and Troy is 32 feet wide, besides two sidewalks of 8 feet each.

The "Third Avenue" of the city of New York is 60 feet wide between the sidewalks, each of which occupies 20 feet: 26 feet of its middle are stoned.

Broadway, New York, is 80 feet wide between the houses, of which 19 feet on each side are occupied by the foot-pavements, leaving 42 feet for the carriage-way.

When broken-stone roads are adopted, it is usual, for the sake of a saving in the first cost, to make only a certain width or "causeway," in the middle of the road, of the harder material, and to form the sides, or "wings," of the natural earth, (or of broken stone, if the causeway be a pavement) which will be preferable in summer and for light vehicles and horsemen.† Sixteen feet for the middle and twelve for the sides is a common proportion.

If the stoned part be made narrower than just wide enough for two carriages to pass upon it, it should be made only wide

* Roads and Railroads, p. 73.

† A serious objection to this plan is, that the wheels which cross the road, and are alternately on the stone and on the earth, will deposite earth upon the stone surface, to the great deterioration of its advantages.

enough for one; for any intermediate width will be a waste of all the surplus beyond what one requires.

If the road is to be made wider than two vehicles require, (which strictly is only 12 feet) it should be enlarged at once to 23 feet; for any intermediate width will cause unequal and excessive wear, and therefore be false economy: an unexpected conclusion, which results from an investigation of Gayffier, pages 184–8.

It would be preferable to place the harder material on the sides of the road, instead of on the centre; for the drivers of heavily-laden vehicles will generally keep them on the sides of the road, so that they can walk on the foot-paths; and if this part be not of the hardest material, it will soon be cut up and rutted by the heavy wagons following each other in the same track.*

SHAPE OF THE ROAD-BED.

In forming the road-bed, or travelled part of the road, the first and most important point, in a flat country, is to raise it above the level of the land through which it passes, so that it may be always perfectly free from water; a precaution which is one of the most essential requisites for keeping a road in good condition. Roads are often placed in a hollow-way, (or even a trench is dug, when better materials are to be added) and their surface is allowed to remain so low, that they form excellent gutters to drain the adjacent fields, at the expense of the comfort, labor, and time of all who travel them. Even the best ditches cannot always secure them from the land-springs, (which will sometimes pass under the ditches by fissures which form inverted siphons) and the only effectual means will be the raising of the surface by an embankment of

* Parnell, p. 129.

two or three feet. The excavations for the ditches should invariably be thus applied.

The necessary *elevation* having been established, the *shape* of the road-bed, at right-angles to its length, or its "transverse profile," must be decided upon.

The road must not be flat, but must "crown," or be higher in its middle than at its sides, so as to permit the water of rains to rapidly run off into the side ditches. If originally flat, it is soon worn concave, and its middle becomes a pool, if it be on level ground; or a water-course, if it be on an inclination. In the former case, the road becomes mud; in the latter, the smaller materials are washed away, and the larger stones left bare. Both these evils are of continual occurrence on our country roads, but may be easily prevented, by shaping the road according to the instructions to be presently given.

The usual, though improper, shape given to a road in order to make it crown, has been a convex curve, approaching a segment of a circle, or a flat semi-ellipse.

Fig. 4.



Though recommended by high authorities, it is very faulty, in consequence of its slope not being uniform, (the proportion between arcs and versed sines constantly changing) and giving too little inclination near the middle, and too much at the sides. From this peculiarity the following evils result:—

1. The water stands on the middle of the road, and washes away its sides.

2. It is worn down very unequally: for all carriages, to avoid the danger of overturning on the steep sides, will

take the middle of the road, which is the only part of it where they can stand at all upright; while the road ought, on the contrary, to be so formed as to induce vehicles to traverse it equally and indifferently in every part.

3. This excessive travel on the middle soon wears it into ruts and holes, so that more water will actually stand upon such an originally convex road than on one reasonably flat.

4. When carriages are forced to travel on the sides, they cause great additional wear to the road, from their constant tendency to slide down the sides, owing to the oblique angle at which the direction of gravity meets the surface.

5. As this sliding tendency is at right-angles to the line of draught, the labor of the horses and the wear of the wheels are both greatly increased.

6. Whenever vehicles are obliged to cross the road, and mount the central ridge, they must overcome the same resistance of gravity, as when they are drawn up a longitudinal hill.

The best transverse profile for a road on level ground, is that formed by two inclined planes, meeting in the

Fig. 5.



centre of the road, and having their angle slightly rounded by a connecting curve. The inclinations thus formed will be uniform, and the road will thus escape most of the evils incident to the curved profile.

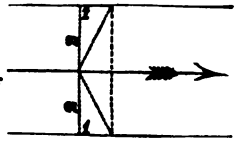
The degree of inclination of these planes will depend on the surface of the road; being greatest where the road is rough, and lessening with its improvement in smooth-

ness. It may also be somewhat less on a narrow road, as the water will have a less distance to pass over. Its maximum is limited by the inconvenience which an excessive transverse slope would cause to carriages. A proper medium for a road with a broken-stone surface, is 1 in 24, or *half an inch to a foot.* Telford, in his Holyhead road, adopted 1 in 30, or 6 inches crown in a road of 30 feet; and McAdam 1 in 36, and even 1 in 60, or 3 inches in a 30 feet road. On a rough road the inclination may be increased to 1 in 20; and diminished on a paved road to 1 in 40, or 1 in 50.

Up to these limits the transverse slope should increase with the longitudinal slope of the road, which it should always exceed, in order to prevent the water running too far down the length of the road, and gullying it out; for the water of rains runs off from the middle of a road in the diagonal of a rectangle, the sides of which are proportioned to the steepness of the two slopes, longitudinal and transverse.

If these slopes be equal, the rectangle becomes a square, and the direction of the escaping waters makes an angle of 45° with the direction of the road. If the transverse slope be double the longitudinal, the waters in their diagonal course make an angle of 63½° with the road, as in the figure. If the road be level longitudinally, they run off at right angles.

Fig. 6.



On a steep side-hill, the transverse profile should be a single slope, inclining inwards from the outer edges of the road to the face of the hill. The ditch should be on the side of the hill, and its waters be carried at proper intervals under the road to its outside. This form is particu-

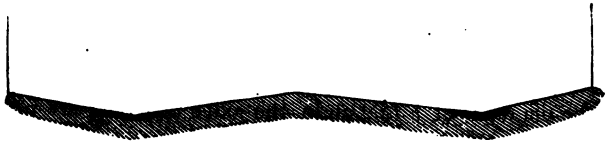
Fig. 7.



larly advantageous when the road curves rapidly around the hill, since it counteracts the dangerous centrifugal force of the vehicles. It may, therefore, be also adopted on the curves of a road in embankment.

Through *villages*, where space must be economized, and the side ditches dispensed with, the middle portion

Fig. 8.



of the road is made to descend each way from the centre as usual, but the sides slope upwards towards the houses. Two furrows, or shallow water-channels, are thus formed, which should be paved to a width of two feet on each side of their middle. This form may also be used on a hill-side.

A frequent, but very bad shape, is hollow in its middle, in which the waters run. Its faults are, that carriages slide down towards each other, especially in frosty weather, and that the large stream in the middle washes away the road. It should never be used except when the width is greatly contracted, and when it is absolutely impossible to obtain room for ditches.

Fig. 9.



FOOTPATHS, &c.

On each side of the carriage-way should be flat mounds, raised six inches above the road. Sods, eight inches wide and six inches thick, should be laid against these mounds in such a manner as to form a sloping edge. The water which falls on the surface of the road runs along the bottoms of these sods, in the "side channels" formed by them, till it passes off under the mounds into the ditches. These mounds, in a great road of thirty feet width, should be six feet wide, and their surfaces should be inclined 1 inch in a yard. One of them should be covered with gravel for a footpath, and the other be sown with grass-seed. Their general adoption would greatly increase the safety of night-travelling, the accidents in which often occur from running on high banks or into ditches. They are not high enough to overturn a coach when one wheel runs upon them, but they indicate at once that the carriage is leaving the road.

Outside of the footpaths should be *fences*, (or hedges, where the climate will permit) and outside of the fences should be the *ditches*. These mounds, ditches, &c., are shown in Fig. 3.

DITCHES.

The drainage of a road by suitable ditches is one of the most important elements in its condition. All attempts at improvement are useless till the water is thoroughly got rid of, and a bad road may often be transformed into a good one, by merely forming beside it deep ditches, sufficiently inclined to carry off immediately all the water which falls upon it. Even if the water does not stand on the surface so as to form mud, if it filtrates from the higher land beside it, and from springs under it, and is not

well drained off, it will weaken the substratum of the road so as to render it incapable of bearing heavy loads, and will be absorbed into the upper stratum by capillary attraction. If the road have a covering of broken stones, the water penetrating into it makes them wear away very rapidly by assisting the vibrating motion of their fragments, as lapidaries grind down the hardest stones by their own dust, with the aid of water.

The ditches should lead to the natural water-courses of the country; and should, if possible, have a minimum slope of one in a hundred and twenty-five, corresponding with the "minimum slope" of the road, though less will suffice if the bottom be truly cut and kept free from grass. They should generally be sunk to a depth of three feet below the surface of the road. Their size will be regulated by their situation, being greater where they intercept the water from side-hills rising above the road, and also where the country is humid. A width of one foot at bottom, with side-slopes depending on the nature of the soil, will generally suffice. In wet soils the ditches should be so wide and deep, that the earth taken from them may be sufficient to raise the bed of the road between them three feet higher than the natural surface.

There should be a ditch on each side of the road on level ground, or in cuttings, and on the upper side of the road, where it is on a hill-side. The water from the side channels must be carried into these, and the contents of the ditches must pass under the road to the natural water-courses by means of *drains*, *culverts*, &c., as will be explained in Chapter III. under the head of "Mechanical Structures."

SIDE-SLOPES OF THE CUTTINGS AND FILLINGS.

These are designated by the proportion between the base and perpendicular of the right-angled triangle, of

Fig. 10.



which the slope is the hypothenuse, the base being always named first, and the perpendicular being the unit of measure. Thus, if a cutting of ten feet in depth goes out twenty feet, as in the figure, its slope is said to be 2 to 1; if it goes out but five feet, it is said to be $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1.

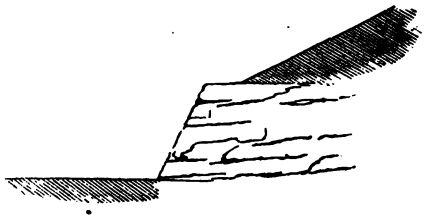
The Slopes of Cuttings or Excavations vary with the nature of the soil, being made for economy as steep as its tenacity will permit. Solid rock may be cut vertically, or at a slope of $\frac{1}{4}$ to 1. Common earth will stand at 1 to 1, or at $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 1; the latter is safer. Gravel requires $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 1. Some clays will stand at 1 to 1; while some, originally sloped 2 to 1, have slipped till they have assumed a slope of 6 to 1. The proper degree of slope is best determined by observing that at which the earth in question naturally stands. Heavy clayey earth will assume a slope of $\frac{3}{4}$ to 1, and very fine dry sand of nearly 3 to 1; these are the extremes in ordinary cases.

Deep cuttings should not, however, be made with less slopes than 2 to 1, (even though they would stand steeper) so that the sun and wind may freely reach the road to keep it dry. The south side of excavations may be made

even 3 to 1, when the extra earth can be profitably used in a neighboring embankment.

When the lower part of a cutting is in rock, and has a steep slope, and the upper portion in earth has a much flatter one, a wide "bench," or offset, should be made, where the change of slope takes place.

Fig. 11.



The following Table shows the angle with the horizon made by slopes of various proportions of base to height.

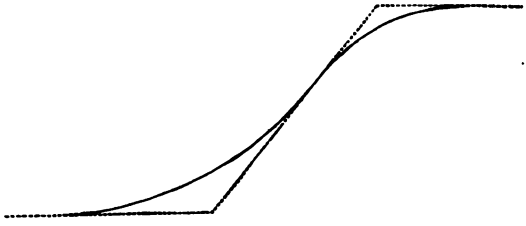
Slopes.	Angles.
¼ to 1	75° 58′
½ to 1	63° 28′
¾ to 1	53° 8′
1 to 1	45°
1¼ to 1	38° 40′
1½ to 1	33° 42′
1¾ to 1	29° 44′
2 to 1	26° 34′
3 to 1	18° 26′
4 to 1	14° 2′
5 to 1	11° 19′
6 to 1	9° 27′

Fillings or Embankments have less variety than cuttings in the nature and condition of their materials, and therefore have less variety of slope, which is usually 1½ to 1, or 2 to 1; though some clays (which should, however, never be employed, if their use can be avoided) require 3 or 4 to 1, when more than four feet high.

CURVED SIDE-SLOPES.

The customary form of the side-slopes of cuttings and fillings—that of an inclined plane—is not the form of most perfect equilibrium and stability. To secure this, the slope may be steep near its top, with its upper angle rounded off, but must widen out at its bottom, where the pressure is the greatest. This is the natural face which an excavation assumes when left to itself, as shown in

Fig. 12.



the figure. Its top, or salient angle, becomes convex; and its bottom, or re-entering angle, is filled up into a concavity, thus forming a curve of contrary flexure. If side-slopes were originally formed into this shape, they would be much more permanent, and the elements, rain, gravity, &c., would then work with man, and assist the labors of art, instead of destroying them, as when the usual form is employed. This curve of stability is moreover that of beauty, coinciding with Hogarth's "line of grace."

This plan is not known to have been ever put into practice, though the walls supporting a bank, particularly for a quay, are sometimes made concave outwardly; and the dam of the Croton Aqueduct has, for its outer profile, somewhat such a curve as has been above recommended.

4. WHAT ROADS OUGHT TO BE AS TO THEIR SURFACE.

QUALITIES DESIRABLE.

The surface of a road ought to be as SMOOTH and as HARD as possible, so as to reduce to their smallest possible degree the resistances of *elasticity*, *collision*, and *friction*.

Smoothness is not only essential to comfort, but even more so to economy of labor, of carriage-wear, and of road-wear. Carriages passing over a smooth road are not only drawn more pleasantly, and with less exertion of animal strength, but also do much less damage to the road, than when it has hollows into which the wheels fall with the momentum of sledge-hammers, each blow deepening the hole and thus increasing the force of the next blow.

Hardness is that property of a surface by which it resists the impression of other bodies which impinge upon it. It is essential to the preservation of smoothness, except in the case of elastic surfaces.

RESISTANCES TO BE LESSENED.

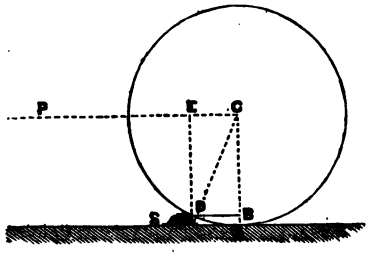
Elasticity.—A road may be perfectly smooth, both before and after a vehicle has passed over it, but if it sink in the least under the passage of a wheel, this yielding presents before the wheel a miniature hill, up which the vehicle must be raised with all the loss of power demonstrated on page 32. If the depression were one inch, and the wheel four feet in diameter, an inclined plane of 1 in 7 would be formed, and one-seventh of the entire weight would need to be lifted up this inch. A road surface of caoutchouc, or India-rubber, of the most perfect smoothness, would therefore be the worst possible for traction, though very pleasant for passengers. The wheels would

always be in depressions, and the horses would be always pulling up hill. An elastic bottom for a road, such as a boggy substratum, would for this reason cause great waste of draught. A solid, unyielding foundation is therefore one of the first requisites for a perfect road.

Collision.—The resistance of collision is occasioned by the hard protuberances, inequalities, stones, and other loose materials of a road against which the wheels strike, with great loss of momentum and waste of the power of draught; for the carriage must be lifted over them by the leverage of the wheels. It is, therefore, most important that such obstacles should be as few and as small as possible, the resistance being proportional to their size, as appears in the investigation which follows.

The power required to draw a wheel over a stone or any obstacle, such as S in the figure, may be thus calculated. Let P represent the power sought, or that which would just balance the weight on the point of the stone, and the slightest increase of which would draw it over. This power acts in the direction CP with the leverage of BC or DE. Gravity, represented by W, resists in the direction CB with the leverage of BD. The equation of equilibrium will be $P \times CB = W \times BD$, whence

Fig. 13.



$$P = W \frac{BD}{CB} = W \frac{\sqrt{\overline{CD}^2 - \overline{BC}^2}}{CD - AB}.$$

Let the radius of the wheel = CD = 26 inches, and the height of the obstacle = AB = 4 inches. Let the weight W = 500 lbs., of which 200 lbs. may be the weight of the wheel, and 300 lbs. the load on the axle. The formula then becomes

$P = 500 \frac{\sqrt{676 - 484}}{26 - 4} = 500 \frac{13.85}{22} = 314.3$ lbs. The pressure at the point D is compounded of the weight and the power, and equals $W \frac{CD}{CB} = 500 \times \frac{26}{22} = 591$ lbs., and therefore acts with this great effect to destroy the road in its collision with the stone, in addition to its force in descending from it. For minute accuracy, the non-horizontal direction of the draught, and the thickness of the axle, should be taken into the account.

The power required is lessened by proper springs to vehicles, by enlarged wheels, and by making the line of draught ascending.

The resistance produced by the hollows between the stones of a pavement is of a different nature. According to the investigations of M. Gerstner, the resistance arising from such a surface is directly proportional to the load, to the square of the velocity, and to the ratio of the width of the cavity to the radius of the wheel; and inversely proportional to the width of the paving stones.

Friction.—The resistance of friction arises from the rubbing of the wheels against the surfaces with which they come in contact, and will always exist, however the surface may be improved. Its two extremes may be seen on a road of loose gravel, and on a railroad. It is greatly increased when the surface is covered with mud, or other loose material, into which the wheel may sink, and thus give a wider contact. The degree in which it is influenced by the surface, may be shown by rolling an ivory ball successively over a carpet, a fine cloth, a smooth floor, and a sheet of ice; the distances to which the same force will impel it over these surfaces increasing in the order in which they have been named.

The surface of a road may be improved by the various methods of diminishing the friction, to be examined in

Chapter IV., such as "Macadamizing" the road, or covering it with a layer of finely broken stones; paving with smooth stone blocks; covering with planks; or laying wheel-tracks of stone, wood, or iron.

The friction on all these surfaces is different, and can be determined only by experiment. The instrument used for measuring it is called a *Dynamometer*. It resembles in principle and general construction the "spring-balances" in common use, in which the application of a weight compresses a spiral spring, the shortening of which, as shown by a properly graduated scale, indicates the amount of weight applied. In the *dynamometer* the power takes the place of the weight of the spring-balances, one end of the instrument being connected with the carriage, and the other with the horses, and the force which they exert to overcome the friction being shown by the index.

Sir John Macneill has greatly improved the instrument, by adapting to it a piston working in a cylinder full of oil, which lessens the vibrations of the index, and enables its indications to be read with more ease and precision. He has also added to it a contrivance for making the instrument itself record the degree of force exerted at each moment of motion. It likewise registers the distance passed over, and the rises and falls of the road.*

This valuable instrument affords a means of ascertaining the exact power required to draw a carriage over any line of road; it will thus enable one line of road to be compared with another, and their precise amount of difference in case of draught, to be determined; it will show the comparative value of the different methods of improving the surface; and it will enable a registry to be kept from year to year of the state of a road, showing where and how much it has improved or de-

* For a full description of this instrument, see *Parnell*, pp. 327–347.

teriorated, and therefore how judiciously, or the contrary, the funds expended on it have been applied.

The following are the results of experiments made with this instrument on various kinds of road. The wagon employed weighed 21 cwt., and the resistance to draught was as follows:—

* On a gravel road, laid on earth—per	21 cwt.,	147lbs.	$= \frac{1}{16}$
* On a broken-stone road, "	"	65	$= \frac{1}{36}$
* " on a paved foundation, "		46	$= \frac{1}{51}$
* On a well-made pavement,	"	33	$= \frac{1}{71}$
† On the best stone track-ways, per	gross ton,	$12\frac{1}{2}$	$= \frac{1}{179}$
‡ On the best form of railroad,	"	8	$= \frac{1}{286}$

From the above experiments we infer, in round numbers, taking the maximum load on a gravel road for the standard, that a horse can draw—

On the best broken-stone road,	3	times as much,
On a well-made pavement,	$4\frac{1}{2}$	times as much,
On the best stone track-ways,	11	times as much,
On the best railways,	18	times as much.

Poncelet§ gives the following relations of the friction to the pressure, for wheels with iron tires rolling on different surfaces:—

On a road of sand and gravel,		$\frac{1}{16}$
On a broken-stone road,	in ordinary condition,	$\frac{1}{28}$
	in perfect condition,	$\frac{1}{67}$
On a pavement in good order,	at a walk,	$\frac{1}{55}$
	at a trot,	$\frac{1}{42}$
On oak planks not dressed,		$\frac{1}{28}$

The most complete series of experiments upon the friction of vehicles have been recently made by *M. Morin.*‖ Some of the most important results are given below, in a tabular form. The fractions express the relation of the force of draught to the total load, vehicles included.

* Parnell, pp. 43, 73. † Ibid. p. 107.
‡ Lecount, p. 219. § Mécanique Industrielle, p. 507.
‖ Aide-Mémoire de Mécanique, p. 337.

CHARACTER OF THE ROAD.	CHARACTER OF THE VEHICLE.					
	Carts.	Trucks (of 2½ tons.)	Diligences (of five tons.)		Carriages with seats hung on springs.	
New road, covered with gravel five inches thick,	$\frac{1}{12}$	$\frac{1}{9}$	$\frac{1}{8}$		$\frac{1}{8}$	
Solid causeway of earth, covered with gravel 1½ in. thick,	$\frac{1}{10}$	$\frac{1}{11}$	$\frac{1}{10}$		$\frac{1}{10}$	
Causeway of earth in very good condition,	$\frac{1}{41}$	$\frac{1}{20}$	$\frac{1}{20}$		$\frac{1}{20}$	
Oaken platform,	$\frac{1}{70}$	$\frac{1}{40}$	$\frac{1}{41}$		$\frac{1}{42}$	
Broken-stone road.			Walk.	Trot.	Walk.	Trot.
Very dry and smooth,	$\frac{1}{15}$	$\frac{1}{54}$	$\frac{1}{48}$	$\frac{1}{41}$	$\frac{1}{49}$	$\frac{1}{42}$
Moist or dusty,	$\frac{1}{53}$	$\frac{1}{38}$	$\frac{1}{34}$	$\frac{1}{27}$	$\frac{1}{34}$	$\frac{1}{27}$
With ruts and mud,	$\frac{1}{33}$	$\frac{1}{24}$	$\frac{1}{21}$	$\frac{1}{18}$	$\frac{1}{22}$	$\frac{1}{19}$
Deep ruts and thick mud,	$\frac{1}{19}$	$\frac{1}{14}$	$\frac{1}{12}$	$\frac{1}{10}$	$\frac{1}{12}$	$\frac{1}{10}$
Pavement, dry,	$\frac{1}{90}$	$\frac{1}{65}$	$\frac{1}{57}$	$\frac{1}{48}$	$\frac{1}{59}$	$\frac{1}{50}$
Pavement, muddy,	$\frac{1}{69}$	$\frac{1}{50}$	$\frac{1}{44}$	$\frac{1}{33}$	$\frac{1}{45}$	$\frac{1}{34}$

From the above table it is apparent how important is the condition in which the best-made road is kept, and how greatly the labor of draught is increased by mud or dust on its surface. The character of the vehicle is also seen to have great influence on the degree of friction.

It is also found that on compressible roads, such as earth, sand, gravel, &c., the resistance is independent of the velocity. On roads of broken stones and on pavements, the resistance increases with the velocity; but the in-

crease is less in proportion as the road is smoother and the vehicle is better suspended.

On roads of broken stones and on pavements, the resistance is sensibly proportional to the pressure, and inversely proportional to the radius of the wheels. It is independent of the number of the wheels, and nearly so of the breadth of the tire. On compressible roads the resistance decreases when the breadth of the tire increases.

5. WHAT ROADS OUGHT TO BE AS TO THEIR COST.

A *minimum* of expense is, of course, highly desirable; but the road which is truly cheapest is not the one which has cost the least money, but the one which makes the most profitable returns in proportion to the amount which has been expended upon it.

To lessen the cost of the construction of a road, while striving to attain the attributes which we have found to be desirable, we should endeavor to avoid the necessity of making high embankments, or deep excavations, or any rock-cuttings; the cuttings through the hills should just suffice to fill up the valleys crossed; the line of the road should be carried over firm ground and such as will form a good surface if no artificial covering be used; or if it is to be Macadamized, it should pass near some locality of good stone; and it should be so located as to require but few and small mechanical structures, such as bridges, culverts, retaining walls, &c.

COMPARISON OF COST AND REVENUE.

The more nearly, however, the road is made to approximate towards "what it ought to be," the more difficult will it be to satisfy the demands of economy. Some medium between these extremes must therefore be adopted, and the choice of it must be determined by the amount and character of the traffic on the road which it is proposed to make or to improve. For this purpose an accurate estimate is to be made of the cost of the proposed improvement, and also of the annual saving of labor in the carriage of goods and passengers which its adoption will produce. If the latter exceed the interest of the for-

mer, (at whatever per centage money for the investment can be obtained) then the proposed road will be "*what it ought to be as to its cost.*" From these considerations it will appear that it may be truly *cheaper* to expend ten thousand dollars per mile upon a road which is an important thoroughfare, than one thousand upon another road in a different locality.

"How to estimate the cost of a road" will be considered at the end of Chapter II., which treats of its "Location." Under the present head, we will examine how we may estimate the probable profits of a road, and from the comparison of the two estimates determine how much the projectors of an improved road would be justified in expending upon it.

AMOUNT OF TRAFFIC.

Let us suppose that it is proposed to improve a road in any way, whether by Macadamizing its surface, by shortening it, or by carrying it around a hill which it now goes over. The first point to be ascertained is the quantity and nature of the traffic which already passes over the line. This may be most accurately found by stationing men to count and note down all that passes in a given time of average activity; and from a sufficient number of such returns, well classified, deducing the annual amount.

COST OF ITS TRANSPORTATION.

The cost of conveying this amount of traffic is next to be calculated. To simplify the question, we will neglect the gain in speed, and consider only the saving in heavy transportation. Assume that over the road, thirty miles in length, 50,000 tons of freight are annually carried, and that the average friction of its surface (as determined by a dynamometer) is $\frac{1}{20}$ of the weight. The annual force of

draught required is therefore 2500 tons, or 5,000,000 lbs. If the average power of draught of a horse at 3 miles an hour for 10 hours a day be taken at 100 lbs.,* there would be required $\frac{5,000,000}{100}$=50,000 horses working at 3 miles per hour. At this rate they would traverse the road in 10 hours, or a working day, and the total amount of labor would equal 50,000 days' work of a horse, or $37,500, taking 75 cents for the value of one day's work.

PROFIT OF IMPROVING THE SURFACE.

Suppose now that the road is to be *macadamized*, or *planked*, or in any way to have the friction of its surface reduced to $\frac{1}{50}$. The total force of draught will then be $\frac{50,000 \times 2000}{50}$ = 2,000,000 lbs. = 20,000 horse power, at 3 miles per hour, for 30 miles, or 10 hours = 20,000 days' work of a horse. This is a saving from the former amount of 30,000. Taking the value of the day's work of a horse at 75 cents, $22,500 would be the actual saving of labor in each year, by the improvement proposed, which amount the carriers could afford to pay, (either in tolls, or in ma-

* The power of a horse at different velocities is very variable, and, in spite of many experiments, is not yet ascertained with the precision desirable. The usual conventional assumption is 150 lbs. moved 20 miles a day at the rate of 2½ miles per hour. This is equivalent to Watts' horse-power of 33,000 lbs. raised 1 foot in 1 minute. Tredgold's experiments give 125 lbs. moved 20 miles a day at 2½ miles per hour. Smeaton gives 100 lbs. moved at same rate; and Hachette 128 lbs. Numerous careful experiments on an English railway (detailed in "Laws of Excavation and Embankment on Railways," page 105) give 110 lbs. moved 19.2 miles per day at the rate of 2.4 miles per hour. Gayffier (page 178) fixes the power for a strong draught-horse at 143 lbs. for 22 miles per day at 2¼ miles per hour; and for an ordinary horse, at 121 lbs. for 25 miles per day at 2½ miles per hour. As the speed of a horse increases, his power of draught diminishes very rapidly, till at last he can only move his own weight.

king the improvement themselves) for their diminished expenditure on horses. If money were borrowed at 6 per cent., $375,000 would be the amount which could be expended in making the improvement, supposing the data to have been correctly assumed. If the improvement can be made for any amount less than this, the difference will be so much clear gain.

PROFIT OF LESSENING THE LENGTH.

Next, suppose that the improvement is only *shortening the road a mile*, by a new location of part of it. One-thirtieth of the original distance, and therefore labor, is saved, or $\frac{50,000}{30} = 1667$ days' work of a horse $= \$1,250$ = interest of $20,833. Add to this the amount which the construction of this extra mile would have cost, and if the proposed improvement can be made for the sum of the two, or even a little more, it should be at once carried into effect; for, besides the saving in the original cost and in the annual labor, there is also that of time, and of the former cost of repairs of the extra mile, which is now dispensed with.

PROFIT OF AVOIDING A HILL.

If the improvement be *avoiding a hill*, the resistance of gravity is to be compared with that of friction. Suppose that a certain road ascends a hill which is a mile long, and has an inclination of 1 in 10, and descends the other side which has the same slope, and that a level route can be obtained by making the road a mile longer. It is demanded how much may be expended for this purpose. Suppose that the friction on this road is $\frac{1}{15}$, and that 50,000 tons, as before, pass over it annually. On the original road of two miles, the force of draught required

to overcome *friction* is $\frac{50{,}000 \times 2000}{40 \times 100} = 25{,}000$ horse power, at 3 miles per hour, or $\frac{25{,}000 \times 2}{3} = 16{,}667$ hours for the 2 miles = 1667 days' work of a horse. To overcome the *gravity* of the loads on the inclination of 1 in 10 requires $\frac{50{,}000 \times 2000}{10} = 10{,}000{,}000$ lbs. for 1 mile = 333,333 lbs. for 30 miles = 3333 days' work of a horse. The descent of a mile on the other side of the hill is not a compensation, for a horse will have no more to take down the descent than he had dragged up the ascent. The total annual labor to overcome both friction and gravity on these two miles is therefore 1667+3333=5000 days' work of a horse.

Upon the new road proposed, there is no inclination to overcome, but an extra mile of length. The force of draught upon it due to friction is $\frac{50{,}000 \times 2000}{40} = 2{,}500{,}000$ lbs. for 3 miles = 250,000 lbs. for 30 miles = 2500 days' work of a horse. The saving of labor is therefore 5000 — 2500 = 2500 days' work of a horse = $1875 = interest of $31,250, which amount (deducting cost of repairs of the extra mile) may be expended in making the new road.

These calculations have been made for extreme cases, in order to make the principle more striking, but the advantages deduced from them have fallen short of the truth, since only the original amount of traffic has been considered, while all experience shows that this is very greatly increased by any improvement in the means of transport, particularly by the increased speed, which is an incidental advantage which we have not taken into account. This increase of traffic cannot, however, be determined

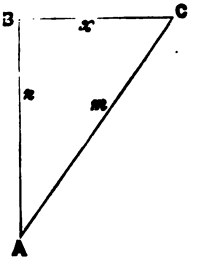
in advance, by mathematical calculation, though we can readily see from how wide a belt of country the inhabitants might profitably avail themselves of the improved road, and will do so eventually; but how many of them will at once profit by it depends on considerations of taste, feeling, and prejudices, which are beyond the power of numbers.

CONSEQUENT INCREASE OF TRAVEL.

To ascertain from what distances to the right or left on either margin, the improved road might expect to attract travel to itself from other thoroughfares by the cross-roads, the following course of reasoning may be employed.

Let AB be a portion of the improved road, connecting the points A and B. Let C be a town connected with the other two points by the old unimproved roads CA and CB. It is required to determine whether the travel from C to A can with the least cost (the cost being compounded of time and labor) go to A by the old road CA, or take the old cross-road CB to the nearest point B of the improved road, and then follow the latter to A.

Fig. 14.

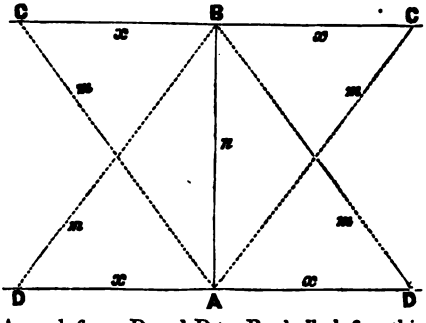


The first point is to ascertain the *ratio* of improvement of the new road compared with the old, or its ratio of diminution of cost of travel. For simplicity of calculation let us call this ratio *two*. Denote the miles in AC by m, in AB by n, and in BC by x. The relative cost of travel over the line AC will also be m, over BC it will be x, but over AB it will be only $\frac{n}{2}$. If, then, $x + \frac{n}{2} < m$, it will cost less to make the circuit from C to A through B; and both routes will be equal in cost when $x + \frac{n}{2} = m$. In this calculation, therefore, the hypothenuse equals the perpendicular and half the base!

The preceding method will decide the question for any one place, but the following plan may be resorted to for the purpose of marking out on the map the entire area, from within which travel may be expected to be attracted to make use of the improved road.

Let AB represent a portion of the improved road, lying between the two points A and B, at which cross-roads come in. It is required to fix the points C, C, D, D, so that lines drawn from C and C to A, and from D and D to B, shall define this tributary area. BC or AD is to be found in terms of AB; i. e. x in terms of n.

Fig. 15.



By the preceding investigation,

$$x + \frac{n}{2} = m.$$

But in the right-angled triangle ABC,

$$m = \sqrt{(x^2 + n^2.)}$$

Substituting in first equation, we get

$$x + \frac{n}{2} = \sqrt{(x^2 + n^2;)}$$

whence is obtained the value,

$$x = \tfrac{3}{4}\, n.$$

Therefore from A and B set off, at right angles to AB, BC, and AD, each equal to $\frac{3}{4}$ AB; join AC and BD; and the area included will be that within which it would cost less for the inhabitants to use the improved road, though with increased distance, than to pursue the direct but unimproved road.*

* *Lecount*, Treatise on Railways, p. 12.

CHAPTER II.

THE LOCATION OF ROADS.

"I do not know that I could suggest any one problem to be proposed to an engineer, which would require a greater exertion of scientific skill and practical knowledge, than laying out a road."—DR. LARDNER, in 1836.

THE *location*, or *laying out*, of a road, consists in determining and marking out on the ground those points through which the road should pass, in order to satisfy, as nearly as possible, the requirements of "what a road ought to be."

These requirements, so far as they affect the location of a road, are, in recapitulation, as follows:

As to direction—that the road should be as straight as possible, but that straightness should be considered subordinate to easiness of grade.

As to slopes—that the road should be as level as possible; that it should avoid unnecessary undulations; and that its slopes should not exceed 1 in 30, nor fall below 1 in 125.

As to cost—that the amount of excavation, embankment, mechanical structures, &c., should be the least which will make the road "what it ought to be," in reference to the quantity of traffic upon it.

If the country through which the road is to pass should be a plain of uniform surface, a straight line joining the two *termini*, and running along the surface of the ground, would satisfy all these conditions at once. In most cases,

the ground is so uneven, hilly, and undulating, sent very great difficulties in the way of a proper The *shortest* line would pass over the tops of the bottoms of valleys, and would thus be often as to be impassable. The *most level* line would crease the distance too much by its necessary as would also the *cheapest* line, which seeks to cuttings and fillings. It is generally impossible all these requirements, and to secure all the good and valuable attributes of the ideally perfect and the best line will therefore be a compromise them all. Great skill is consequently required lect the best possible line among these conflicting and this skill is more often needed in our new and dly expanding country than in England and other sculed regions, where the lines of all important roads been long since established; though even there miles of old roads are yearly abandoned, and new substituted for them, in order to make a slight saving distance, or to diminish the height to be overcome.

Two distant points of departure and arrival being given, it is required to determine the best line for a road connecting them.

In many cases the best general route for the desired road can be determined with perfect certainty without going upon the ground, by simply examining a map of the district upon which merely the courses of the streams are laid down. From them an instructed and skilful eye can deduce all the elevations and depressions of the country with great precision and accuracy. To do this, however, requires a knowledge of so much of Physical Geography as explains the manner in which nature has disposed the inequalities of the surface of the earth.

1. ARRANGEMENT OF HILLS, VALLEYS, AND WATER-COURSES.

Hills and valleys at first glance appear to the ignorant, and even to the better informed, to be utterly without system, order, or arrangement; but they have in reality been disposed by nature with a great degree of symmetry, and their forms and positions are found to be the result of the uniform action of natural laws, and to be capable of being traced out and understood with comparative ease.

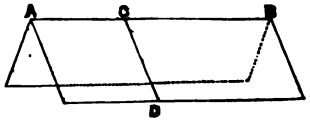
Hills being the great antagonists and natural enemies of the road-maker, he must endeavor to find out their weak points, and to learn where he can best attack and penetrate them, and most easily overcome their opposition to his improvements. *Water-courses* being his guides and chief assistants, he must study their habits and principles of action, and learn what are the causes which produce their seeming vagaries of direction.

HILLS are most usually found constituting *chains*, or *ridges*, though sometimes collected in *groups*, and at others *detached*, or *isolated*. The chains are usually made up of several parallel *ranges*, and often send forth branches or *spurs* in transverse directions. Sometimes they are merely the slopes of a *table-land* in which their summits merge. To form a proper conception of a *range* of hills, imagine in the midst of a plain an elongated mass of the form of the roof of a house. The two faces of this represent the *slopes* of the range; their intersection is the *ridge*, their bases are the *feet*, the distance from one foot to the other is the *breadth*, and from one extremity to the other the *length*; the vertical elevation of the ridge above either foot is its *relative height*, and above the sea

its *absolute height.* All water which falls upon the slopes descends thence in a well-defined track which corresponds with *the line of greatest slope*, the direction of which it is therefore important to determine.

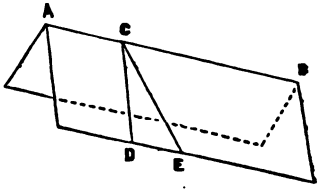
LINE OF GREATEST SLOPE.

Fig. 16.



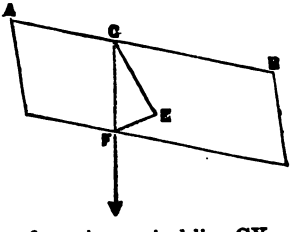
If the ridge AB of a range of hills be horizontal, and its opposite slopes inclined planes cutting each other in that horizontal line, a spherical body, allowed to roll down freely from any point C of the ridge, will descend in the line CD at right angles to the horizontal line AB; this line CD being its nearest possible approach to the vertical line in which it tends to move in obedience to the law of gravity. CD is therefore the *line of greatest slope*, and consequently of quickest descent. It is this line which water tends to follow in its search for the shortest path of descent.

Fig. 17.



If the ridge AB be inclined, the path down which the sphere will roll is no longer CD at right angles to AB, but another line CE, diverging in the direction of the slope of the ridge. To determine its precise position, from any point C, Fig. 18, let fall a vertical line CV, and, from any point F of this vertical, raise a perpendicular to the plane of the slope, meeting it in E. Draw CE, and it will be the line of greatest slope required; for it is at the least possible distance from the vertical line CV.

Fig. 18.



The same result might be otherwise obtained by raising at C a perpendicular to the plane of the slope, and from any point therein letting fall a vertical line, which will intersect the slope at some point E, which is to be joined to C as before.

When the slopes are not planes, the constructions are more complicated, as the "lines of greatest slope" then become curves.*

The waters which have fallen upon the mountain-tops from time immemorial, have hollowed out for themselves, or have adopted for their passage, channels which follow the *lines of greatest slope*, whose directions we have just investigated. In descending the slopes of a range of hills, they thus form "principal" valleys, the directions of which, as we have seen, are perpendicular to the ridge when it is horizontal, and, when it is inclined, share its general inclination. These streams thus divide the range or chain into *ramifications* or *branches*, having approximately the same direction as themselves. The line in which the opposite slopes of two of these adjoining "branches" intersect each other, and which thus marks out the lowest line of a valley, is called a *thalweg*.† The foot of one of the opposite slopes which enclose a valley is generally parallel to the foot of the other in all its sinuosities, a projecting point of the one corresponding to a receding cavity in the other. This symmetry is, however, sometimes replaced by alternate widenings and contractions.

The main ridge is cut down at the heads of the streams into depressions called *gaps*, or *passes*; the more elevated points are called *peaks*. They are respectively the origins of the valleys and of the branches on both sides of the principal slope. In the gaps are often found swamps,

* Gayffier, p. 3.

† A German word, (signifying "the road of the valley") which has been naturalized in the French language, and might be conveniently added to our engineering vocabulary in English.

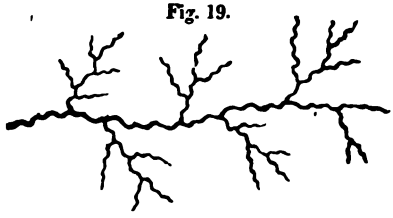
fed by the rain which falls on the peaks between which they lie. In these the streams take their rise, and thence run in contrary directions down the opposite slopes of the ridge. The intermediate point, from which they start and diverge, is called the *culminating point* of the ridge.

Thus the "Notch" of the White Mountains is the "culminating point" from which diverge the Saco and the Ammonoosuc, the one emptying into Long-Island Sound and the other into the Atlantic. So, too, from the various culminating points in the Alleghany chain, streams run, on the one side towards the Atlantic, and on the other to the great lakes and to the Mississippi. From the culminating points of the Rocky Mountains, the slightest impulse would turn the nascent stream either into the head-waters of the Missouri and thence into the Gulf of Mexico, or into the head-waters of the Columbia and thence into the Pacific Ocean. The same phenomena, on a miniature scale, are repeated on every ridge after every shower.

A river of the largest class marks the lowest points (or the *thalweg*) of a "principal" valley. On each side of it is a bounding ridge, which is itself pierced by "secondary" valleys, through each of which runs a stream of less magnitude, its waters emptying into the first-named river, of which it is a tributary. The ridges which form the valleys of each of these lateral streams are in their turn furrowed by valleys of the third class; their banks by the valleys of streams of still less importance; and so on.

The "principal" valley is a trunk, from which, and from one another, the lesser valleys and streams ramify, like the branches of a tree, or like the veins of the body; meeting it at angles approaching more nearly to a right angle in proportion as the ridge of the slope which they furrow approaches to a horizontal line.

Fig. 19.



INFERENCES FROM THE WATER-COURSES.

We thus see how an accurate map of the streams of any district may enable us to deduce from them the position of the valleys, their lowest points, and the lines of greatest slope; for with these the water-courses coincide. The position of the ridges which form the valleys is a necessary corollary, as well as their lines of greatest slope.

Having determined these, we can profit by the following fundamental principles:

1. If a principal ridge is met by two secondary ridges at the same point, the point of meeting is a maximum of height.

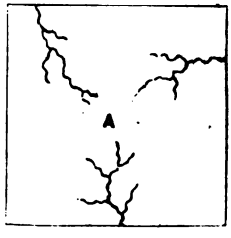
2. If a principal ridge is met by two *thalwegs* at the same point, the point of meeting is a minimum of height.

3. If a principal ridge is met at the same point by a secondary ridge and a *thalweg*, nothing can be inferred.*

The following examples† show more in detail some of the inferences which may be drawn from the map:

If, on any portion of a map, the streams appear to diverge from any point, as A, that point must be the common source of the streams, and therefore the highest part of that region.

Fig. 20.

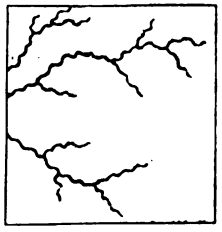


The converse is likewise true: if the streams all converge towards some

* Jullien, ii. 293. † Mahan, p. 278.

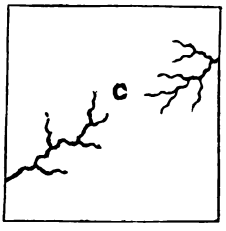
point, as B, that will be the lowest spot of the district embraced within the map.

Fig. 21.



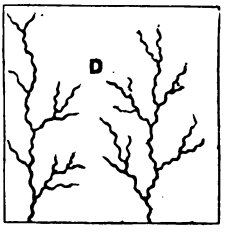
If two streams are seen to flow in opposite directions from the same point, as C, it may be inferred that this spot is at the head of the respective valleys of these streams, and supplies them with water, and that it must be fed by higher ground beside it; or, in other words, that there is a ridge of hills separating the heads of the two streams, and that there is a depression or indentation in this ridge at the point C, which is therefore the natural and proper location for a road connecting the two valleys.

Fig. 22.



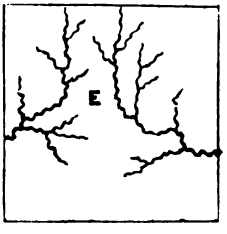
If two streams are parallel to each other, and flow in the same general direction, this circumstance simply indicates that the ridge which divides them has the same general inclination and direction as the streams. But if any of their smaller tributaries approach each other at their sources, as at D, this indicates a depression of the main ridge at that point, and marks it out as the lowest and easiest spot for the crossing of a road, as in the preceding case.

Fig. 23.



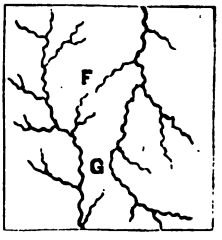
If two streams have been flowing in parallel courses, but at a certain point E diverge from each other,

Fig. 24.



that spot is the lowest point of the ridge between them.

Fig. 25.



If two streams are generally parallel in their courses, but flow in opposite directions, the low points in the ridge between them will still be shown by the approach to each other, as at F, of the branches or secondary streams; or by the principal streams approaching each other at any point, as at G.

Having thus become acquainted, by the aid of the map, with the principal features of the ground, we are prepared to plan, if not the precise location of the road, at least the proper course for the preliminary explorations upon the ground. Long lines of road usually follow the valleys of streams, and thus secure moderate grades and find the lowest passes of the ridges to be crossed. In this way the Simplon road crosses the Alps, by ascending the valley of the Saltine to its head, and then descending that of the Doveria. So, too, the Boston and Albany railroad finds an easy grade from Worcester to Springfield in the valley of the Chickapee river, and then winds through the mountains, up the valley of the Westfield, till it reaches the head-waters of the Housatonic upon the other side of the ridge. The Utica and Schenectady railroad never quits the valley of the Mohawk. In short, all roads strive to avail themselves of such facilities. If they cannot, and if the map shows that their general course is transverse to the directions of the streams, instead of with them, it may be at once predicted that they will be steep in their ascents and descents, or exceedingly expensive in their construction.

These principles having been established, and all pos-

sible information obtained from the map, the *Reconnaissance* may be commenced.

2. RECONNAISSANCE.

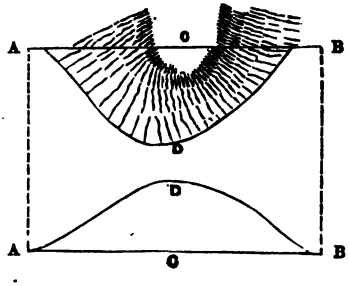
This is a rapid preliminary survey of the region through which the road is to pass, and is generally made by the eye alone without instruments. It is intended to be only an approximation to accuracy, and to serve to determine through what points routes should be instrumentally surveyed. The road-maker must examine the country, map in hand, visit and identify the points selected on the map, and see whether his closet decisions have been correct. He must go over the ground backward and forward in opposite directions, for it will often appear quite different, and convey very dissimilar impressions, according to the point from which it is viewed. Thus, a hill which one is descending may seem to have a very easy slope, while it may appear very steep to one ascending it. No time or labor should be spared in these first explorations, as they will save much expense in the subsequent surveys, which in their turn should be thoroughly executed, to secure the route most economical in construction. Indeed, the surveyor should become as perfectly acquainted with the face of the country as if he had passed his hand over every foot of it.

Certain points, called "ruling" or "guiding" points, will be found, through which the road must pass; such as a low gap in a range of hills, a narrow part of a river suitable for a bridge, a village, &c. But a road which is to be a thoroughfare between two places of great trade, should not be turned from its direct course to accommodate a small town, taxing for its benefit all who travel upon

the road. "The greatest good of the greatest number" is here the rule. Still less should individual interest be allowed to operate, and the general interest of the community be sacrificed to the convenience or caprice of a single person. The permanent benefits to future generations should never be made subordinate and subservient to temporary and personal advantages.

Between these "ruling" points, the straight line joining them is to be marked out. The route adopted must vibrate on each side of this line, like an elastic cord, continually tending to coincide with it, except when deflected to the right or to the left by weighty reasons, such as the accidents of the ground supply. Thus, a swamp, which would render necessary an expensive causeway, is a sufficient cause for a wide deviation of the road to avoid it. The disadvantages of straight lines, which encounter and run over hills, have been explained in the preceding chapter. In the accompanying figure the upper sketch shows a *plan*, or map-view, of two roads, the one ACB *over* a hill, and the other ADB *around* it; and the lower sketch shows a *profile*, or side-view, of the respective heights of the same lines.

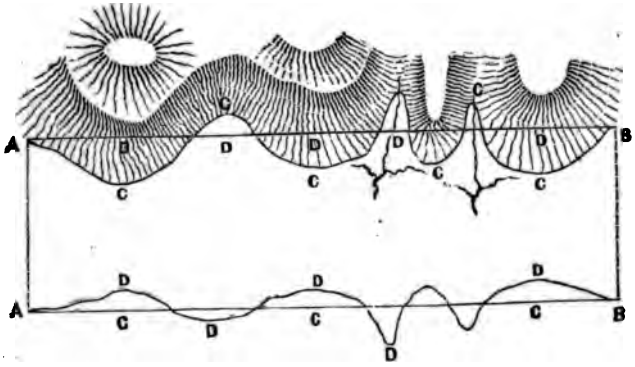
Fig. 26.



When there are many small valleys or ravines, with projecting spurs and ridges intervening, instead of making the road wind on the level ground, and follow all its sinuosities, as, ACCCCB, in the next figure, it will be better to make a nearly straight line, as ADDDB, cut through the projecting points in such a way that the earth dug out

shall just suffice to fill the hollows. The gain by saving of distance may balance the cost of cutting and filling.

Fig. 27.

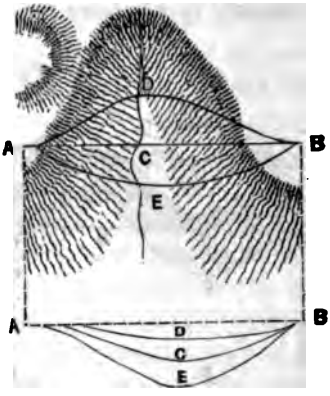


When the route follows the valley of a stream, it may conform to its sinuosities, if the turns are not too abrupt, and if the cuttings and fillings on a straighter line would be too expensive, but should approximate to the latter plan, if the importance of the road and the funds at command will justify the increased cost. The former plan, however, generally gives the cheapest and most level route; and guided by this principle a blind man was for a long time the very best layer out of roads in the hilly regions of Yorkshire and Derbyshire. He followed the streams closely, and when they made too sharp bends, he sought in these arcs the straightest chords which passed over practicable ground.

When a valley is to be crossed, the route should generally deviate from the straight line ACB, (Fig. 28) and curve towards the head of the valley ADB, which there is usually shallower and narrower. If it deviated in the other

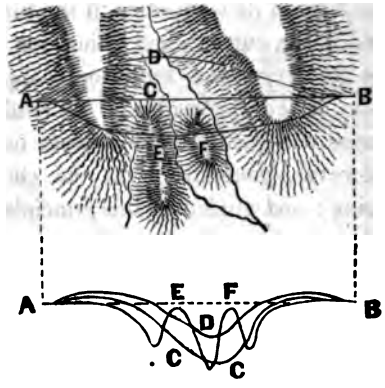
direction, as AEB, it would increase the depth and width to be filled up, as is shown by the corresponding profiles.

Fig. 28.



But sometimes the two sides of the valley approach each other at some point lower down, so as to render the space between their banks narrower though deeper; and if on measurement this area is found on the whole to be lessened, so as to require less embankment, the road should cross at that point instead of higher up.

Fig. 29.



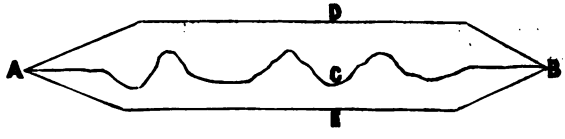
Another case in which a valley may, with advantage, be crossed down stream, is when in that part of the valley are found detached or isolated hills and ridges, as E and F, which may cause a great saving of embankment, on the line AEFB, compared with either the straight route ACB, or the up-stream one ADB, as is shown in the accompanying plan and profile, in which the same letters refer to corresponding lines.

When a road is to join two places on the opposite sides

of a ridge, we can profit by the observation that the streams, by the approach of their sources, show the lowest points of the ridge; and of the various *passes* thus indicated, we should choose that one, the valleys of the streams from which run as nearly as possible in the direction of the required line; and that one, also, which has the most uniform inclination—not easy at the foot and steep towards its summit, as is often the case.

When a road is to join two places situated on the same side of a mountain ridge, but half way down its side, a straight line between them would cross, in their deepest and widest parts, all the "principal" valleys which run down from every gap. One of two other plans must then be adopted; either to ascend, and carry the road, with necessary windings, at the level of the culminating points of the gap, where the valleys have only begun to be hollowed out; or to carry it at the foot of the ridge, where the valleys have run out to nothing, and merged themselves undistinguishably in the plain. Either plan, in spite of the initial and final ascent and descent, is preferable to the direct line.

Fig. 30.



The respective profiles of the three plans would be somewhat as represented in the figure, in which ACB is the first plan, ADB the second, and AEB the last. The last line is generally taken, because there are more inhabitants at the foot of the ridge. It would properly run near the line of separation between the uncultivated slopes and the ploughed fields.

The location of a road is also influenced by the *geology* of a district, which must therefore be carefully studied. This science will make known the probability of finding rock on cutting deep into a hill proposed to be crossed; in which case the cutting should be avoided, if possible, by a different location of the line. It will also determine the dips of the strata to be cut into, the angle at which they will stand, and their liability to slip; and therefore through which the line may best pass. If the road is to be covered with broken stone, or to be paved, a knowledge of the locality of the best materials might cause a line approaching it to be preferred to one which left it at a distance.

The *Reconnaissance* is to be made in accordance with the principles which have been enunciated, obtaining all needful information from the residents of the region to be examined, and the details of its general course are to be marked out on the ground, thus establishing "Approximate" or "Trial" lines. In a wooded country this is done by "blazing" the trees in the line selected, (removing a chip from their sides with an axe;) and in a cleared country by driving stout stakes at the most important points of the line, such as all changes in its direction, and in the slope of the ground.

3. SURVEY OF A LINE.

When the different portions of a proposed line have been thus marked out, in order to form an accurate opinion of its merits, it is necessary to measure—

1. *Its distances.*
2. *Its directions.*
3. *Its heights.*

MEASUREMENT OF DISTANCES.

The length of a straight line, that is, the distance between its extremities, may be approximately estimated in a variety of ways, without the delay of actual measurement in detail.

Sound is a well-known means. Its velocity is 1100 feet per second at the temperature of freezing.* If a gun be fired by an assistant at one end of a line, an observer at the other end, by counting the seconds which intervene between seeing the flash and hearing the report, and multiplying their number by 1100, can estimate the distance with considerable accuracy. If he have not a watch with a second-hand, he can at once make a portable pendulum, by fastening a pebble to a string, and making it swing in regular vibrations, each of which will be performed in an exact second, if the string be $39\frac{1}{8}$ inches long; in half a second, if it be $9\frac{3}{4}$ inches long; and in a quarter second, if its length be $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches.

This method is best adapted for considerable distances, in which there are good points for observation, such as the hills on the two opposite sides of a wide valley.

For shorter distances, the *distinctness* with which different objects can be seen, is an approximate guide. Thus the windows of a large house can generally be counted at the distance of 3 miles; men and horses can just be perceived as points at about $1\frac{1}{4}$ miles; a horse is clearly distinguishable at $\frac{3}{4}$ mile; the movements of a man at $\frac{1}{2}$ mile; and a man's head is plainly visible at $\frac{1}{4}$ mile.†

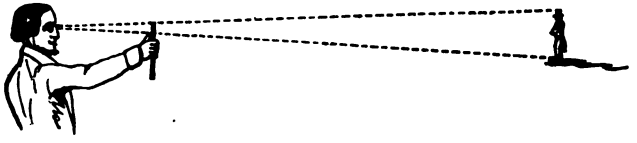
* For each degree of Fahrenheit above 32°, add one-half foot, and for each degree below, subtract one-half foot. A temperature of 60° would therefore give $1100 + \frac{28}{2} = 1114$ feet per second.

† Frome, p. 60.

The Arabs of Algeria define a mile as "the distance at which you can no longer distinguish a man from a woman." These distances of visibility will of course vary somewhat with the state of the atmosphere, and still more with individual acuteness of sight, but each person can modify them for himself.

For still less distances, an easy method is to prepare *a scale*, by marking off on a pencil what length of it, when it is held off at arm's length, a man's height appears to cover at different distances (previously measured with accuracy) of 100, 500, 1000 feet, &c. To apply this, when

Fig. 31.



a man is seen at any unknown distance, hold up the pencil at arm's length, making the top of it come in the line from the eye to his head, and placing the thumb nail in the line from the eye to his feet. The pencil having been previously graduated by the method above explained, the portion of it now intercepted between these two lines will indicate the corresponding distance.

If no previous scale have been prepared, and the distance of a man be required, take a foot-rule, or any measure minutely divided, hold it off at arm's length as before, and see how much a man's height covers. Then knowing the distance from the eye to the rule, a statement by the Rule of Three (on the principle of similar triangles) will give the distance required. Suppose a man's height, of 70 inches, to cover 1 inch of the rule. He is then 70 times as far from the eye as the rule; and if its distance

be 2 feet, that of the man is 140 feet. Instead of a man's height, that of an ordinary house, of an apple-tree, the length of a fence-rail, &c., may be taken as the standard of comparison.

Quite an accurate measurement of a line of ground may be made by *walking over it* at a uniform pace, and counting the steps. It is better not to attempt to make each of the paces three feet, but to take steps of the natural length, and to ascertain the value of each by walking over a known distance, and dividing it by the number of paces required to traverse it. An average length is 32 inches. An instrument, called a pedometer, has been contrived, which counts the steps taken by one wearing it, without any attention on his part. It is attached to the body, and a cord, passing from it to the foot, at each step moves a toothed wheel one division, and some intermediate wheelwork records the whole number upon a dial.

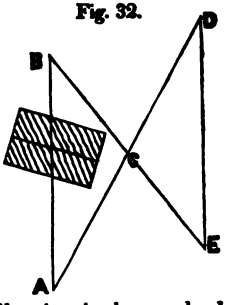
These methods are all approximations. For more accurate measurements a *chain* is employed. The usual surveyor's or Gunter's chain, is 66 feet or four rods long, and is divided into 100 links; but for the measurement of distances only, without reference to areas in acres, a chain of 50 or 100 feet is much preferable.

When *obstacles* are encountered on the line, rendering a direct measurement impossible, such as a house, a pond, a river, &c., resort must be had to some of the many ingenious contrivances to be found in the special treatises on surveying and engineering field-work. Two only of the best, which have the advantage of requiring no calculations, will be here given.

When the obstacle is one around which we can pass, such as a *house* or a *pond*, the following plan may be adopted. Let AB be the distance required. Measure

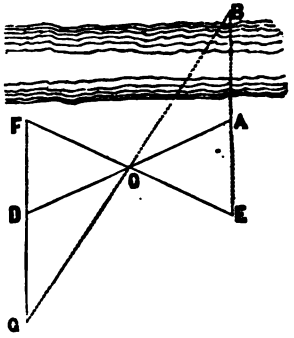
from A obliquely to some point C, past the obstacle. Measure onward in the same line, till CD is as long as AC. Place stakes at C and D. From B measure to C, and from C measure onward in the same line, till CE is equal to CB. Measure ED, and it will be equal to AB, the distance required.

Fig. 32.



When the obstacle is a *river*, the following is the method to be employed. Let AB be the required distance. From A measure any line diverging from the river, as AD, and set a stake in its middle point C. Take any point E, in the line of A and B. Measure from E to C, and onward in the same line, till CF equals CE. Then find by trial the point G, which shall be at the same time in the line of C and B, and in the line of D and F. Measure the distance from G to D, which will equal the required distance from A to B. The lines which it is not necessary to measure are dotted in the figure.

Fig. 33.



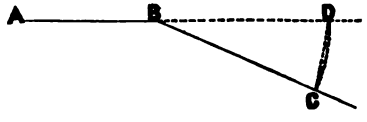
MEASUREMENT OF DIRECTIONS.

Having measured the lengths of the various portions of the line, by whatever method will give the degree of accuracy required, their directions are also to be examined, determined, and recorded.

These directions may be accurately determined, with reference to the adjoining portions of the lines, and therefore to any given line, by simple measurements with the chain, without the use of any of the usual complicated angular instruments.

Let AB and BC represent two lines on the ground, meeting at any angle. It is required to determine the change

Fig. 34.

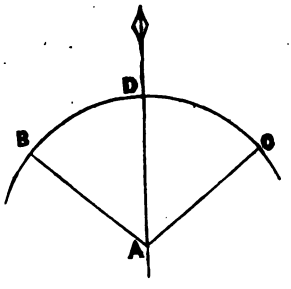


in the direction of the line BC from that of AB, *i. e.*, the angle CBD, or the "angle of deflection." Set off from B equal distances, BC on the new line, and BD on AB produced, and measure DC, which is the chord of the angle required. To find the angle numerically, take half this measured chord, (which equals the sine of half the angle to radius BC) and divide it by BC. Find in a table of natural sines the angle corresponding to the quotient. Twice this is the angle CBD required. But even this brief calculation is needless for putting down the line upon paper, as it is only necessary to describe an arc from B as centre with BC as radius, and to set off CD of the proper length, the distances being taken from any one scale.

If the direction of a line be required independently of any other line upon the ground, it is usually referred to the direction of the meridian, *i. e.*, the line which passes through the north and south poles of the earth. The compass is the readiest means of obtaining this, although, in addition to its other inherent defects, it gives the angle made by the given line with only the *magnetic* meridian, which is constantly changing, and from which the *true* meridian in most places varies considerably.

To determine the *true meridian* (and therefore the angle which any line makes with it) without the use of the compass, the following is a simple and sufficiently accurate method. On the south side of any level surface, erect an upright staff, shown, in horizontal projection, at A. Two or three hours before noon mark the extremity, B, of its shadow. Describe an arc of a circle with A, the foot of the staff, for centre, and AB, the distance to the extremity of the shadow, for radius. At about as many hours after noon as it had been before noon when the first mark was made, watch for the moment when the end of the shadow touches the arc at another point C. Bisect the arc BC at D. Draw AD, and it will be the true meridian, or north and south line, required.

Fig. 35.



For greater accuracy, describe several arcs, mark the points in which each of them is touched by the shadow, bisect each, and adopt the average of all. The shadow will be better defined, if a piece of tin with a hole through it be placed at the top of the staff, as a bright spot will thus be substituted for the less definite shadow. Nor need the staff be vertical, if from its summit a plumb-line be dropped to the ground, and the point which this strikes be adopted as the centre of the arcs, through which the meridian line AD is finally to be drawn.*

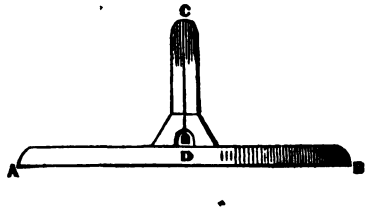
* For the method of determining the true meridian by the north star, see Davies' Surveying, p. 127.

MEASUREMENT OF HEIGHTS.

The relative heights of the different points, at which the line changes its slope, are next to be determined. The operation required for this purpose is called LEVELLING. It consists in finding how much each of these points is below any level line. The difference of their distances below it (measured perpendicularly to it) is the difference of their heights. The first step, then, is to discover means of getting a level line at any point desired.

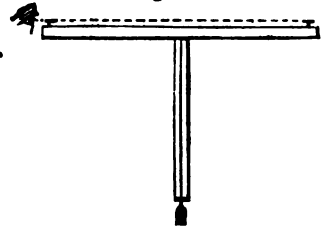
The principle, that a level line is everywhere perpendicular to the direction of gravity, furnishes the first method. Upon it depends the well-known "*Mason's level*," in which a straight edge AB is "level," or horizontal, when a line CD, exactly at right angles to it, is covered by a plumb-line attached to its upper extremity C.

Fig. 36.



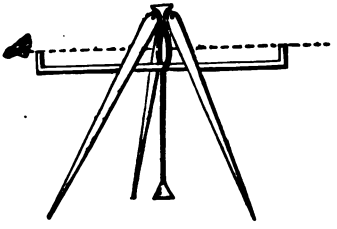
As this position of the level line is inconvenient, in practice, for long sights, by inverting the instrument we get the "*Plumb-line level*." To construct it, at the middle of a straight edge, attach a bar, so that a line drawn through its middle is exactly at right angles to the straight edge. From the point of meeting suspend a plumb-line. Turn the instrument till the plumb-line covers the line drawn on the bar. Then will

Fig. 37.



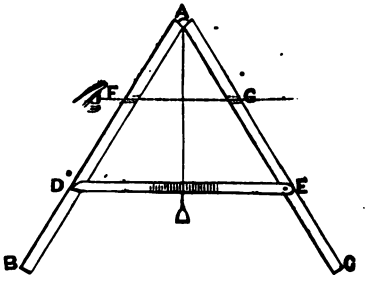
the straight edge be a *level line*, and by looking over its surface, or across sights, placed at equal heights above its ends, this level line may be produced by the eye, so as to pass over any point to which the straight edge is directed.

Fig. 38.



A modification of the plumb-line level, which has the advantage of being self-adjusting, is called the "*Pendulum level.*" As before, a straight edge and a bar are fixed at right angles to each other, but a heavy weight at the lower extremity of the bar keeps it always vertical, and, consequently, the straight edge always horizontal. The whole apparatus is suspended by a ring from the junction of three legs which move on pivots, so as to form a steady support on the most uneven ground. A "*tripod*" of this sort is generally employed for the support of all the instruments of surveying.

Fig. 39.

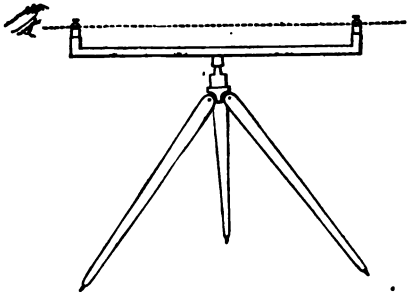


The "A *level*" is a portable and convenient modification of the mason's level. The legs AB, AC turn on a hinge at A, as does the bar DE at E, so that all three may be folded up into a stout rod. When the plumb-line corresponds with the middle of the bar DE, the feet of the instrument are on the same level At F and G are fixed two sights, at equal distances from the feet, so that

when the latter are level, the line, obtained by looking through these sights, is level also. The use of the other divisions on the bar DE will be explained under the head of "Grades."*

Another simple instrument depends upon the principle that "water always finds its level." If a tube be bent up at each end, and nearly filled with water, the surface of the water in one end will always be at the same height as that in the other, however the position of the tube may vary. On this truth depends the "*Water level.*" It may be easily constructed with a tube of tin, lead, copper, &c., by bending up, at right angles, an inch or two of each end. In these ends cement thin vials, with their bottoms broken off, so as to leave a free communication between them. Fill the tube and the vials, nearly to their top, with colored water. Cork their mouths, and fit the instrument, by a steady but flexible joint, to a tripod.

Fig. 40.



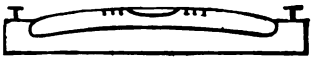
To use it, set it in the desired spot, place the tube by eye nearly level, remove the corks, and the surfaces of the water in the two vials will come to the same level. Looking across them, we get the level line desired. Sights of equal height, floating on the water, and rising above the tops of the vials, would give a better-defined line.

The "*Spirit level*" consists essentially of a curved glass

* See Simms on Drawing Instruments, 2d edition, p. 146.

tube filled with alcohol, but with a bubble of air left within, which always seeks the highest spot in the tube, and will therefore by its movements indicate any change in the position of the tube. To prepare the tube for use, it is placed with its convexity uppermost, and supported either in a block, or by suspension; and when the bottom of the block, or the sights at each end of it, coincide with some level line previously established, marks are made on the tube at the extremities of the air bubble. The instrument is then ready for use; for whenever the bubble, by raising or lowering one end, has been brought to stand between the original marks, (or, in case of expansion or contraction, at equal distances on either side of them) the sights will be on the same level line.

Fig. 41.



When, instead of the sights, a telescope is made parallel to the level, and various contrivances to increase its delicacy and accuracy are added, the instrument becomes the engineer's spirit-level, and is out of the reach of the unprofessional readers for whom this volume is chiefly designed.* The same is the case with the "French reflecting level."

By whichever of these various means a level line has been obtained, the subsequent operations in making use of it are identical. Since the "water level" is easily made and tolerably accurate, we will suppose it to be employed. Let A and B represent the two points, the difference of the heights of which is required. Set the instrument on any spot from which both the points can be seen, and at such a height that the level line will pass above the highest one. At A let an assistant hold a staff graduated into feet, tenths, &c. Turn the instrument towards the staff,

* For its description and adjustments, see Davies' Surveying, p. 140.

look along the level line, and note what division on the staff it strikes. Then send the staff to B, direct the instrument to it, and note the height observed at that point. If the level line produced by the eye passes 2 feet above A and 6 feet above B, the difference of their heights is 4 feet. The *absolute* height of the level line itself is a matter of indifference. If the height of another point, C, not visible from the first station, be required, set the instrument so as to see B and C, and proceed exactly as with A and B. If C be found to be 3 feet above B, it will be $4-3=1$ foot below A. If C be 1 foot below B, as in Fig. 43, it will be $4+1=5$ feet below A. The comparative heights

Fig. 42.

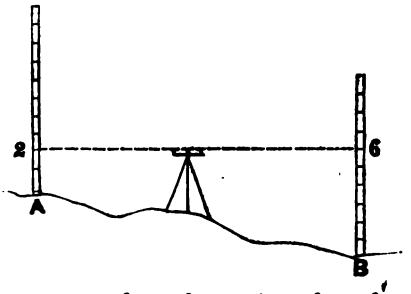
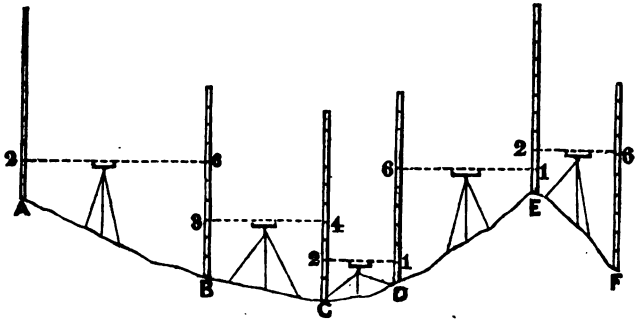


Fig. 43.



of a series of any number of points, can thus be found in reference to any one of them.

The beginner in the practice of levelling may advan-

tageously make in his "field-book" a sketch of the heights noted, and of the distances, putting down each as it is observed, and imitating, as nearly as his accuracy of eye will permit, their proportional dimensions.* But when the observations are numerous, they should be kept in a tabular form, such as that which is given below. The names of the points, or "stations," whose heights are demanded, are placed in the first column; and their heights, as finally ascertained, in reference to the first point, in the last column. The heights above the starting point are marked +, and those below it are marked —. The back-sight to any station is placed on the line below the point to which it refers. When a back-sight exceeds a fore-sight, their difference is placed in the column of "ascents;" when it is less, their difference is a "descent." The following table represents the same observations as the preceding sketch, and their careful comparison will explain any obscurities in either.

Stations.	Distances.	Back-sights.	Fore-sights.	Ascents.	Descents.	Total Heights.
A						0.00
B	100	2.00	6.00		—4.00	—4.00
C	60	3.00	4.00		—1.00	—5.00
D	40	2.00	1.00	+1.00		—4.00
E	70	6.00	1.00	+5.00		+1.00
F	50	2.00	6.00		—4.00	—3.00
		15.00	18.00		—3.00	

The above table shows that B is 4 feet below A; that C is 5 feet below A; that E is 1 foot above A; and so on. To test the calculations, add up the back-sights

* In the figure, the limits of the page have made it necessary to contract the horizontal distances to one-tenth of their proper proportional size.

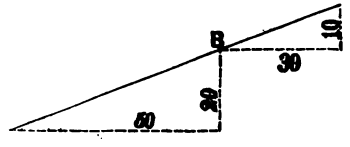
and fore-sights. The difference of the sums should equal the last "total height."*

The level line obtained by any of these instruments is a tangent to the surface of the earth, and therefore diverges from the surface of standing water, which presents a curve corresponding to that of the earth. The difference between the lines of true and apparent level, is 8 inches at the distance of a mile; but since it varies as the *square* of the distance, it is very insignificant in sights of ordinary length, (one-eighth of an inch for a sight of one-eighth of a mile) and may be completely compensated by setting the instrument midway between the points whose difference of level is desired; a precaution which should always be taken, when possible. If the ground renders sights of unequal length unavoidable, a balance should be struck as soon as possible, by adopting corresponding inequalities in the contrary direction.

The heights observed along the length of the road, which give its "longitudinal section," should be taken at every change of slope; and at every hundred feet, when the line is finally located.

It is also necessary to take them at right angles to its length, in order to obtain the "transverse" or "*cross sections*." These are required for the subsequent calculations of the "cutting and filling," and to enable the engineer to see what would be the effect upon these, of moving the line to the right or to the left. The right page of the note-book is usually devoted,

Fig. 44.



* For a full development of the details of these operations, see Davies' Surveying, and "Simms on Levelling," Alexander's American edition.

in part, to the cross-sections, taken in reference to any station, as B. In this example, on the right, the ground rises 10 feet in going out 30; on the left, it falls 20 in a "distance out" of 50.

These cross-sections should be taken at every change of longitudinal slope. At every change of slope transversely, single heights and "distances out" should be taken. The future calculations of cubical contents will be facilitated by observing the following rules:—

1. Take a cross-section whenever either edge of the road passes from excavation to embankment, or *vice versâ*.

2. When the road is partly in excavation and partly in embankment, ascertain the "distance out" at which the grade, or level of the base, cuts the surface of the ground.

3. Take heights at each edge of the base, *i. e.* at distances on each side of the centre line, equal to the half width of the base of the road.

4. Take the intermediate cross-sections at some decimal division of 100 feet.

The *Mountain Barometer* is an instrument of great value for the rapid determination, with approximate accuracy, of the heights of the leading points in an extensive district of country.*

The temperature of *boiling water* supplies another easy means of approximation. The degree of heat at which water boils diminishing as the height increases, tables have been constructed from observation, with the aid of which the height of a place may be calculated from the temperature at which water there boils.†

* See Simms on Mathematical Instruments.

† See Silliman's Journal, 1846, pp. 134–5.

4. MAPPING THE SURVEY.

The *lengths*, *directions*, and *heights* of the different portions of the line having been ascertained, they are next to be represented on paper, in such a way as to convey to an instructed eye a complete idea of the ground over which the route passes. This idea will be as accurate as could be obtained from actual examination, and much more easily embraced by the mind; the details being made subordinate to the leading features.

The mapping of a line comprehends two distinct branches:

1. The plot.
2. The profile.

THE PLOT OF A LINE.

This represents the lengths and directions of the different portions of a line, projected on a horizontal plane, as they would be seen by an eye looking down upon them from a great height directly above them. If the lengths have been measured horizontally, as is usual, they will require no farther reduction. Before commencing the plot, its "*scale*" must be determined, *i. e.*, what proportion the representation is to bear to the reality, or how many feet of the line each foot of the plot is to represent. If one foot of the plot represent 1000 feet of the line, 100 feet of the latter will occupy one tenth of a foot on the plot, and so on. Any convenient scale may be assumed, but must be carefully preserved unchanged in the same plot. The changes in the direction of the line, or the angles of deflection of its adjacent parts, may be most easily laid down, as explained on page 91, by describing an arc from the angular point with the same radius used

on the ground, (taken to the proper scale) and setting off on the arc, as a chord, the proper distance measured in like manner.

If the deflection had been measured by an angular instrument, (which, however, the preceding method dispenses with) it would have been laid down on the paper by a "protractor," the most usual form of which is a small brass semicircle, divided into degrees similar to those on the instrument.

Upon the *plot*, it is usual to represent the hills and valleys in the vicinity of the line; but since they are supposed to be seen horizontally projected in a "map-view," as they would appear to an eye looking down upon them from an infinite height, they cannot be drawn with the rises and falls of the front view in which we usually see them, but must be represented by some artificial and conventional method. They are accordingly supposed to be cut by a number of equidistant horizontal planes, and the horizontal "contour curves" of intersection to be drawn upon the map, the intervals between them being filled up by short hatchings perpendicular to the curves.* Hills, represented on these principles, are indicated by numerous diverging lines, shorter, nearer, and heavier, in proportion as the hill is steeper, and *vice versâ*. See the examples on pages 83–4.

All water-courses must also be carefully represented on the plot; and the nature of the surface, whether pasture, ploughed land, swamp, woods, &c., together with the detached objects upon it, such as houses, mills, churches, &c., be indicated by certain arbitrary signs. For our purposes they are not necessary, but may be found, if desired, in any topographical manual.

* For fuller details, see Davies' Surveying, Eastman's Topography, Williams's Practical Geodesy, &c.

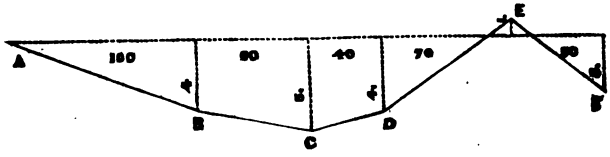
THE PROFILE OF A LINE.

This represents, to any desired scale, the heights and distances of the various points of a line, projected on a vertical plane. It thus gives a "side-view" of its ascents and descents. Any point on the paper being assumed for the first station, a horizontal line is drawn through it; the distance to the next station is measured along it to the required scale; at the termination of this distance a vertical line is drawn; and the given height of the second station above or below the first is set off on this vertical line. The point thus fixed determines the second station, and a line joining it to the first station represents the slope of the ground between the two. The process is repeated for the next station, &c.

But the rises and falls of a line are always very small in proportion to the distances passed over; even mountains being merely as the roughnesses of the rind of an orange. If the distances and the heights were represented on a profile to the same scale, the latter would be hardly visible. To make them more apparent it is usual to "exaggerate the vertical scale" tenfold, or more, *i. e.*, to make the representation of a foot of height ten times as great as that of a foot of length. Take, for instance, the example on page 98. Let one inch represent one hundred feet for the distances, and ten feet for the heights.

From A draw a horizontal line. Measure on it one inch, representing one hundred feet of length. Thence draw downwards a vertical line. Measure on it four-tenths of an inch, representing four feet of height. This fixes the point B. Join A to B. This line AB represents the slope of the ground. Next, along the horizontal line, measure six-tenths of an inch farther, representing sixty feet

Fig. 45.



of length. Measure on a vertical line thence drawn, five-tenths of an inch, representing five feet of height. This fixes C. Join C to B. Proceed in like manner for all the levels.

The distances may be written horizontally in their appropriate places, and the heights or depths of the ground (above or below the *datum* line) vertically, along the lines which represent them, as in the figure.

5. ESTABLISHING THE GRADES.

The *grade* of a line is its longitudinal slope, and is designated by the proportion between its length and the difference of height of its two extremities. The ratio of these two quantities gives it its name, as we have seen; the road being said to have a grade of one in thirty when it rises or falls one foot in each thirty feet of length. When the "profile" of a proposed route has been made, a "grade-line" is drawn upon it (usually in red) in such a manner as to follow its general slope, but to average its

Fig. 46.



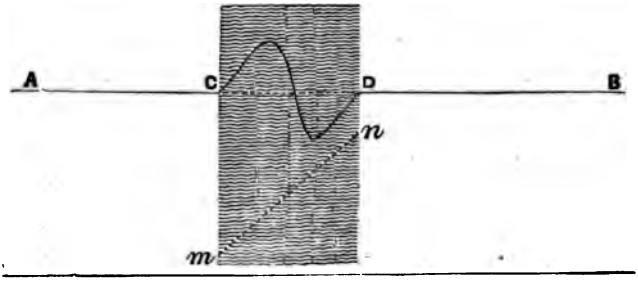
irregular elevations and depressions, as in the figure. The ratio between the whole distance and the height is then to

be calculated. If, as in the figure, it rise 100 in 4000, the grade is one in forty, flatter than our assumed limit of one in thirty, and the line will be a satisfactory one, if on calculation it be found that the cuttings about equal the fillings. If either be much in excess, the grade is altered to equalize them, as will be explained under the next head. But if the grade be found steeper than the limit, as when it ascends the face of a hill with a rise of 100 feet in 1500, or a slope of one in fifteen, either the hill must be cut down, or, which is generally preferable, the length of the line must be increased so as to equal $100 \times 30 = 3000$. The best method of obtaining this increased length, or "development," (whether by a zigzag or by a single oblique line) will depend upon the manner in which the line meets the face of the hill, whether at right angles or obliquely, and should be determined by geometric constructions upon the plot, such as those which follow, modified if necessary by the features of the ground.

Problem. To fix the position of a line joining two given points, so that it shall ascend with a given grade a slope steeper than this grade, and shall also be the shortest possible line which will fulfil this condition.*

Case 1. *When the straight line joining the two points meets the slope at right angles.*

Fig. 47.



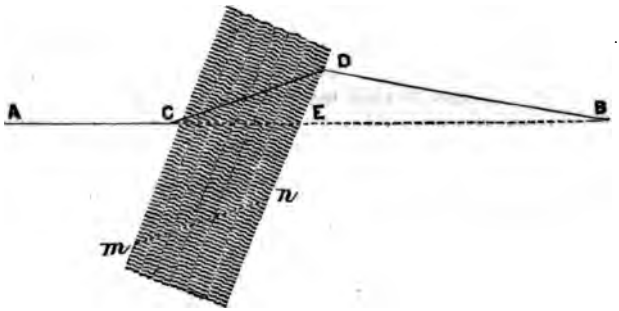
* Gayffier, p. 13.

Let A and B be the given points, and let the top and bottom lines of the slope to be ascended be considered parallel. Let *mn* represent the length which the road up the hill must have to ascend with the proper grade. Join the given points by a straight line, and between the points C and D, at which this line meets the top and bottom line, establish a zigzag, of a sufficient number of turns to make its entire length equal to *mn*, the "development" required; which in the instance last supposed would be 3000 feet, the straight line CD being only 1500.

The road which ascends the Catskill mountain makes seven such zigzags or tacks. Their angles should be rounded off by curves, as explained in a following article on "Final Location." At these curves the width of the road should be increased, as directed on page 46.

Case 2. When the straight line meets the slope obliquely, and the two given points are very distant from each other.

Fig. 48.



Let A and B be the given points. Between the top and bottom lines of the slope draw a line *mn* at such a degree of obliquity as will make its length equal to the development required, which, in the instance supposed, is 3000 feet. The straight line AB would be too steep between C and E. Therefore from the point C draw a line CD, parallel and therefore equal to *mn*. Join DB, and the line ACDB will be the one desired.

A zigzag between C and E would give a longer line; for, comparing the parts of the line thus obtained with those of the other, we find AC common to both; the zigzag CE equal to CD by construction; and EB *longer* than DB, because farther from the perpendicular.

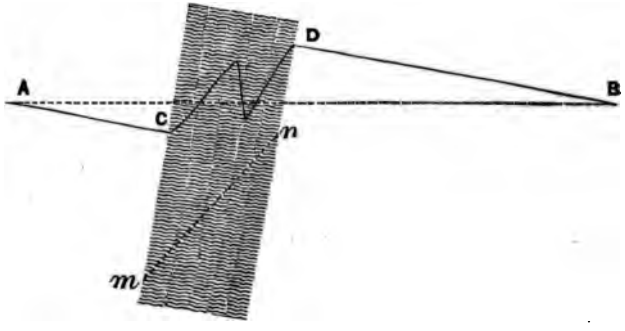
The construction above directed is merely approximately true, becoming perfectly so only when the points A and B are infinitely distant from each other. The strict construction is that which follows.

Case 3. *When the straight line meets the slope obliquely, and the two given points are near each other.*

From the given points A and B draw perpendiculars to the nearest edges of the slope. The line joining the feet of these porpendiculars will be less than, equal to, or greater than, the developed line *mn*, according to the steepness of the slope, and the degree of obliquity with which it is met by the straight line which joins the given points. Three sub-cases, requiring different constructions, are thus formed.

Sub-case 1. *When the line joining the perpendiculars is shorter than the developed line* mn.

Fig. 49

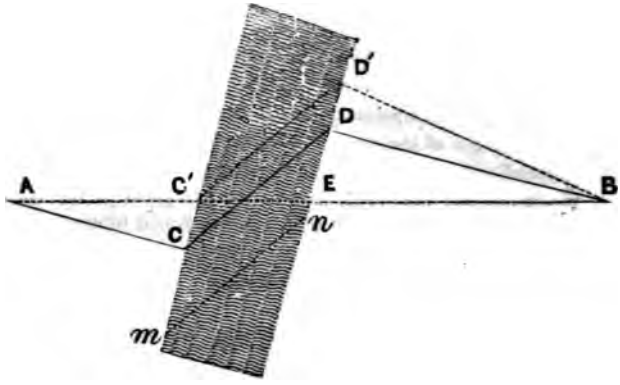


From A and B draw AC and BD perpendicular to the edges of the slope. Join C and D by a zigzag line, equal in length to the developed line *mn*. Then will the line thus obtained

fulfil the conditions required; the length of the zigzag being equal to the necessary length *mn*, and the lines AC and BD being perpendicular to the top and bottom of the hill, and therefore the shortest possible distances to it.

Sub-case 2. *When the line joining the perpendiculars is equal to the developed line* mn.

Fig. 50.



Draw the perpendiculars AC and BD, as before, and join their feet by the line CD. Then will the line ACDB be shorter than any other line, (as AC'D'B, obtained by the construction of Case 2) for AC and BD, being perpendiculars, are the shortest possible, and CD has a constant length, wherever it may be placed.

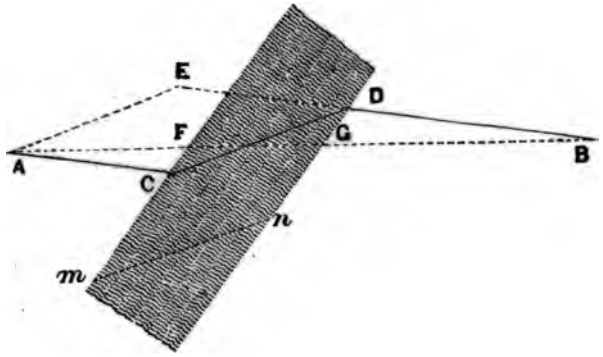
A zigzag line from C' to E would not produce the shortest line, for the same reasons as in Case 2.

Sub-case 3. *When the line joining the perpendiculars is longer than the developed line* mn.

From A, Fig. 51, draw AE parallel and equal to *mn*. Join EB. From the point D (where this line intersects the edge of the slope) draw DC parallel and equal to AE. Join CA. Then will ACDB be the shortest line required.

For, AE, being equal to *mn*, cannot be shortened, and EB is a straight line, and therefore the shortest possible line, as is

Fig. 51.



consequently the whole line AEDB. But this line is in the wrong place, and its parts require to be transported parallel to themselves. By this operation is formed the line ACDB, which has all its parts equal to those of the former line, and which is therefore the shortest possible.

It might seem preferable to adopt the direct line AB, and to ascend the hill by a zigzag from F to G; but this would not give the shortest line; for AF and GB are longer respectively than AC and DB, because farther from the perpendiculars.

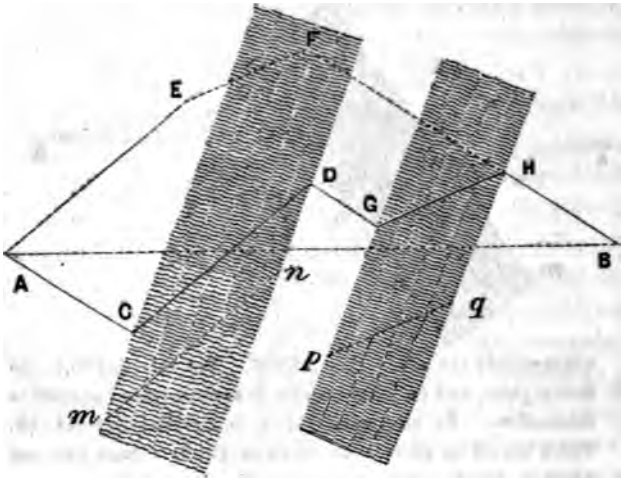
When the lines AC and DB, obtained by the construction above directed, fall beyond the perpendiculars let fall from A and B upon the top and bottom of the slope, this result shows that this construction is inapplicable, and that the case is one in which it is proper to adopt the perpendiculars, and to join them by a zigzag of the proper length.

Case 4. When two neighboring slopes are separated by a level space; whether a valley, or a table-land on the ridge of a hill.

Between the top and bottom lines of one slope draw the line *mn*, equal in length to the developed line with which that slope must be crossed; and in like manner on the second slope, draw the line *pq*.

Then from A draw AE, parallel and equal to *mn*. From E draw EF parallel and equal to *pq*. Join FB. The line AEFB

Fig. 52.



is the shortest line possible, for the same reasons as was AEB in the preceding sub-case 3. But its parts require to be differently arranged without changing their length, which is effected thus. From H draw HG parallel and equal to FE. From G draw GD parallel to HF, and terminating at the edge of the next slope. From D draw DC parallel and equal to EA. Join CA by a line which will be parallel to FH. This new line ACDGHB is equal to the former line AEFB, and therefore is the shortest line required.

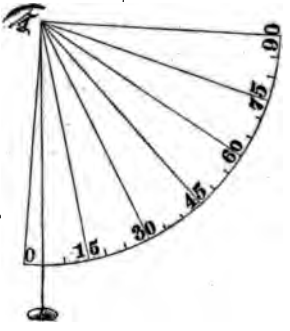
If the space between the two slopes was a valley, in which there was a given point to be passed through, as a bridge, the problem would divide itself into two others, such as have been solved in the preceding cases.

Grades may be approximately estimated upon the ground, (without measuring distances and heights) by a slight addition to the "plumb-line level," described on page 93. Connect the horizontal and vertical bars by oblique braces. To prepare it for use, depress or elevate the sights, so that their line coincides with an ascent or de-

scent of one in thirty, or any other grade previously established by levelling. Mark the point at which the plumb-line now cuts the oblique braces. Do the same for other grades, the more varied the better, and the instrument will thus become a *clinometer*, or grade-measurer. When it is placed upon any slope, and its sights directed to any object (such as a target on a rod, or a paper in a cleft stick) at the same height above the surface as its upper edge, that division on the brace which is cut by the plumb-line will indicate the inclination of the slope. The A level described on page 94, may be used in a similar manner, a scale having been in the same way formed on the bar DE.

An extempore *clinometer* may be made with a sheet of paper, a thread, and a pebble. Take a sheet of paper of any shape, double it, and a straight line is formed; double it again along the straight line, and four right angles are obtained. Cut out one of the right angles, and double it so as to bring the sides of the right angle together, and it will be bisected, forming two angles of 45°. Fold this in three equal parts, and angles of 15° will be formed; repeat the last operations, and angles of 5° will be obtained. The subdivision may be carried as far as desired. To use the instrument, form a plumb-line by tying a pebble to the end of a thread, and attach it at the centre of the angles. Holding the right angle to the eye, if the grade be descending, or the opposite corner if it be ascending, turn the paper till its edge is in the line which passes from the eye to some object at the same

Fig. 53.



height above the surface. The plumb-line will then indicate the angle of the slope. In the figure it strikes 5°, equivalent, by the table on page 44, to 1 in 11.

6. CALCULATING EXCAVATION AND EMBANKMENT

The proper grade-line having been thus determined, and drawn on the profile, (which shows the heights of the ground over which the line passes) the difference between the height of the ground and that of the grade-line at any point, will of course represent the depth of cutting, (or excavation) or the height of filling (or embankment) as the case may be, at that point. This depth, or height, in feet and decimal parts of a foot, should be written in red figures (*cotes rouges*) at the proper points of the profile. With these, knowing also the intended width of the road and the inclination of the side-slopes, the cubical contents of the excavations and embankments, or the amount of "earth-work," may be accurately calculated.

The cost of the road will depend in a great degree upon the quantity of the "earth-work" to be done, and may be greatly lessened by making the amount of excavation precisely equal to that of embankment, so that what is dug out of the hills may just suffice to fill up the hollows. It is therefore very important for economy to calculate these amounts with accuracy before the final location of the line, so that if they are found to be unequal, the position and grades of the line may be changed to produce the equality desired.

This accurate calculation is necessary, after the final location, for another reason; inasmuch as the contractors, who usually perform the work, are paid, not by the day, nor in the lump, but by a certain price per cubic yard, the

exact determination of the number of which is therefore required to ascertain their just dues.

PRELIMINARY ARRANGEMENTS.

For calculating the cubical contents of the solid mass of earth cut out or filled in, four different methods are in common use. All four, however, require the same preliminary arrangements and preparations, which will therefore be now given.

Figure 54 is a plan (on a scale of 800 feet to the inch) and figure 55 a profile (on a vertical scale of 80 feet to the inch) of an old line of road, which it is desired to improve by cutting down the hill and filling up the hollow, so as to form a single slope, with a uniform grade, from A to B.* The distances between the stations are written horizontally; the heights of the ground above the datum line are written along the vertical lines which represent them; and at the extremities of these vertical lines are placed the numbers which represent the depths of cutting or filling at those points, and which are equal to the differences between the heights of the ground and of the "grade-line," or new road.

SECTIO-PLANOGRAPHY.

A method of representing the cuttings and fillings upon the plan, devised by Sir John Macneill, has been named "*Sectio-planography*." Usually the plan and the profile are drawn separately, and when the former varies much from a straight line, it is difficult for an unpractised

* Simms on Levelling, Am. edition, p. 81.

Fig. 55.

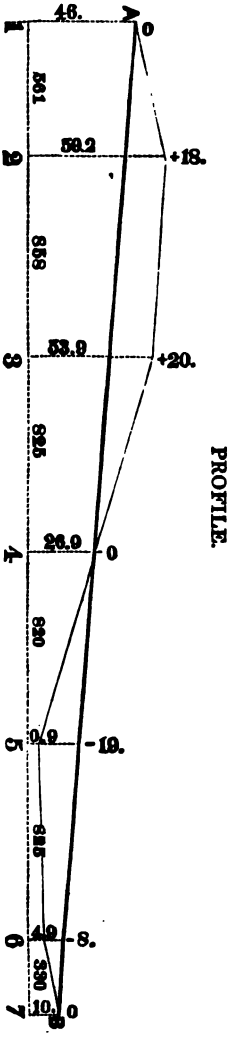
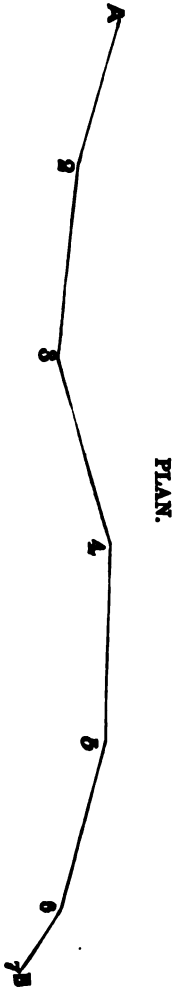

46.
0
561
59.2
+18.
888
53.9
+20.
825
26.9
0
630
0.9
-19.
825
4.9
-8.
330
10.
0
PROFILE.

Fig. 54.


A
5
3
4
2
0
B
PLAN.

eye to discover the corresponding points of the plan and profile; as the latter is formed by placing all the distances along a straight base line, and therefore fills a longer space than the winding plan; and as the two are also frequently drawn far apart, or even on different sheets. In the improved method, the depths of cutting and of filling at each station are set off on one side or the other of the *plan* of the line, as laid down upon the map, so that all the information desired, with regard to any portion of the line, may be found on that very spot. The accompanying figure shows its application to the preceding example, the "plan" of which has been intentionally made very winding.

Fig. 56.



To make the distinction more striking, the cuttings may be shaded with lines perpendicular to the line of the road, and the fillings with lines parallel to it; or the former may be colored red, and the latter blue.*

TABULAR ENTRIES.

The *data* of the profile, with those deduced therefrom, should be presented in a tabular form, such as that which follows, and which refers to figure 55.

* See Simms on Sectio-Planography.

Station.	Distances.	Height of ground above datum line.	Rise or fall for each distance.	Height of grade above datum.	Cut. +	Fill. −
1		46.0		46.0	0	
2	561	59.2	— 4.8	41.2	18.	
3	858	53.9	— 7.3	33.9	20.	
4	825	26.9	— 7.0	26.9	0	0
5	820	0.9	— 7.0	19.9		19.
6	825	4.9	— 7.0	12.9		8.
7	330	10.0	— 2.9	10.0		0
	4219		36.0			

The *first* column contains the number of the station, or point, the height of which above the datum line is contained in the *third* column. The *second* column records the distances between the stations.

The *fourth* column shows the rise or fall for each distance, which is obtained by a simple proportion, the whole distance and difference of height being known. Thus, 4219 : 561 : : 36 : 4.8.

The *fifth* column shows the height of the grade line, *i. e.* of the road as improved, above the datum line at each station. The numbers in it are obtained by subtracting successively the fall between two stations, as recorded in the fourth column, from the height of the grade line at the preceding station. Thus, $46 - 4.8 = 41.2$.

The *sixth* and *seventh* columns show the depths of cutting or filling at any station. They are the differences between the height (from column 3) of the ground at any station, and the height of the grade-line (from column 5) for the same station.

The station (No. 4) at which the cutting ends, and the filling begins, is called a "Point of Passage."

CUBICAL CONTENTS.

With these data the calculation may be commenced, and the end areas—or middle areas, or both, according to the method adopted—be sought, and the cubical contents thence deduced. The details of these calculations are of great importance to the practical engineer, but occupy so much space, that they have been transferred to the *Appendix*. The following are their results.

"*Averaging end areas*" is the most usual method of calculation in this country, but gives a result which always *exceeds* the correct amount, in a greater or less degree, according to the inequality of the end areas. In the present example, its error in excess is 10,000 cubic yards, which amount, beyond what was justly due for the work done, would be paid by a company or town by which this improvement should be made, if their engineers should adopt this method of calculation.

The calculation by "*Middle areas*" gives an amount which *falls short* of the true one, by a deficiency equal to exactly half of the excess of the preceding method.

"*The Prismoidal formula*" alone gives the *correct* amount; which, in this example, is 2,200,968 cubic feet of excavation, and 1,541,152 of embankment.

The fourth method, by "*Mean Proportionals*," gives a result always less than the true one, and exceedingly erroneous when one of the end areas is nothing.

The substitution of the correct Prismoidal method for the erroneous ones which are so frequently employed, is demanded by every consideration of accuracy, economy, honesty, and justice; and the full calculations in the *Appendix* show that the additional labor required is too trifling to be a reasonable obstacle.

BALANCING THE EXCAVATION AND EMBANKMENT.

When the quantity of excavation on any given portion of the road exceeds that of the embankment, the excess is called "*Surplus*," and must be deposited, upon the adjoining land, in masses called "*Spoil-banks*."

When the excavation is insufficient to make the embankment, the deficiency is called "*Wantage*," and must be supplied from extra "*Side-cuttings*" in the neighboring fields.

Both these cases are expensive and otherwise objectionable; it is therefore very desirable to make the excavation and embankment "balance" each other, so that the earth dug out may just suffice to fill up the hollows. If the calculations show much disparity in the two amounts, the location of the line must be changed in some way, so as to effect the desired equality.

This equalization must, however, be restrained within certain limits; for it should evidently be abandoned, when, in order to find sufficient excavation to make the embankment, it would be necessary to go to such a distance that the cost of transport would exceed the cost of making side-cuttings for the embankment, and of depositing the distant excavation in spoil-banks. The comparison of the price of transport with that of excavation and of land, will therefore determine the distance within which the balancing must be established.

SHRINKAGE.

The equality recommended must be taken with an important qualification, dependent on the fact that earth transferred from excavation to embankment shrinks, or is compressed, so as to occupy, on the average, *one-tenth*

less space in bank than it did in its natural state, 100 cubic yards "shrinking" into 90.

Rock, on the contrary, occupies more space when broken, its bulk increasing by about one-half.

In experiments made on a large scale, by Ellwood Morris, C. E.,* the *shrinkage* of light sandy earth was $\frac{1}{9}$ of its volume in excavation; of yellow clayey earth $\frac{1}{12}$; and of gravelly earth $\frac{1}{12}$. The *increase* of hard sandstone rock, quarried in large fragments, was $\frac{5}{12}$ of its volume in excavation; and of blue slate-rock, broken into small fragments, $\frac{6}{9}$.

Upon some of the public works of the state of New York, the usual allowance has been for the shrinkage of gravel and sand 8 per cent.; for clay 10 per cent.; for loam 12 per cent.; for mucking, or surface soil, 15 per cent.; and for clay "puddled" 25 per cent. The increase of bulk of rock was taken at one-third, or sometimes at one-half; though some experiments showed that one yard of slate-rock made from 1.75 to 1.8 cubic yards of embankment.

These considerations lead us to modify the requirements of equality in the excavations and embankments, and to adjust them so that the former shall exceed the latter by about 10 per cent.

CHANGE OF GRADE.

We will now take up the example on page 114, in which we find the excess of the excavation over the embankment, or its "surplus," (according to the correct calculation, of which the result is given, on page 117) to be 659,816 cubic feet. We must therefore change the grade,

* Journal of the Franklin Institute, October, 1841.

so as to lessen the excavation, and increase the embankment, till the former exceeds the latter by only one-tenth of itself. The grade line AB (figure 55) might be raised either at A or at B. The latter is preferable, since it will increase the gentleness of the slope. The height which it should be raised at B might be calculated in advance, but the complication of the resulting formula is so great, that it will be better to *assume* some height, (which an experienced eye can do with considerable accuracy) and having found, by a simple proportion, the changes in the cuttings and fillings at each station, to recalculate the whole cubic contents. If the desired difference has not been attained in the result, it will at least be a guide by which a second assumption can be made with a very close approximation to precision.

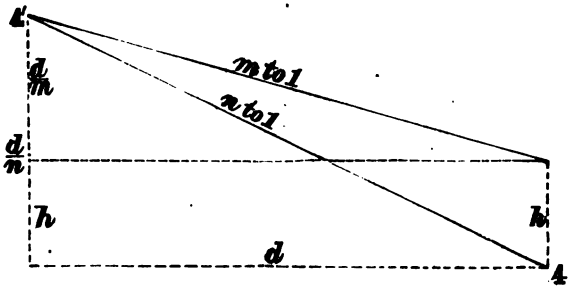
Consider the grade to be raised three feet at station 7. A proportion between the sum of the distances from station 1 to 7, and that to any other station, will give the change of cutting or filling at that station.

For station 2,	4219 :	561 : : 3 :	0.4
" " 3,	4219 :	1419 : : 3 :	1.0
" " 4,	4219 :	2244 : : 3 :	1.6
" " 5,	4219 :	3064 : : 3 :	2.2
" " 6,	4219 :	3889 : : 3 :	2.8

The place of station 4, *i. e.* the "Point of passage," is changed by the elevation of the grade line AB, and removed towards station 3, to some new station 4′; see Fig. 57. A problem here presents itself, to find the distance between the old and new points of passage, knowing the slope of the grade and that of the ground. Call the former m to 1, and the latter n to 1. Let the elevation of the new grade line above the old point of passage $= h$ feet; and the distance required $= d$.

An inspection of the figure shows that the heights of the two right-angled triangles, whose bases are d, are respectively

Fig. 57.



$\frac{d}{n}$ and $\frac{d}{m}$. It is also evident that $\frac{d}{n} = \frac{d}{m} + h$; whence is obtained the general formula,

$$d = h \frac{mn}{m - n}.$$

In the present case (see table on page 116) $m = \frac{4219}{36-3} = 128$; $n = \frac{825}{53.9 - 26.9} = 31$; and $d = 1.6 \times \frac{128 \times 31}{128 - 31} = 65$.

The new station 4′ is therefore distant from station 3, 825 — 65 = 760 feet, and from station 5, 820 + 65 = 885 feet.

Adopting these new distances, and changing the cuttings and fillings in accordance with the elevations of grade obtained by the proportions on the preceding page, they will stand thus:

Station.	Distance.	Elevation of grade.	New Cut.	New Fill.
1		0.0	0	
2	561	0.4	17.6	
3	858	1.0	19.0	
4′	760	1.6	0	0
5	885	2.2		21.2
6	825	2.8		10.8
7	330	3.0		3.0

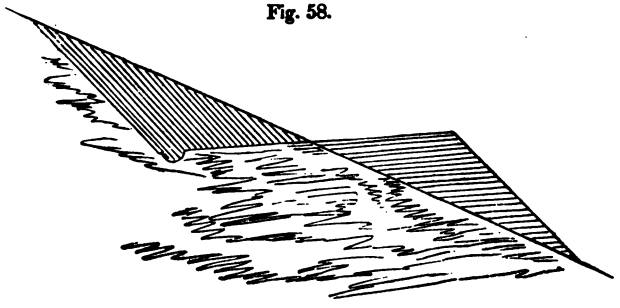
The calculations being repeated with these data, it will be found that the excavation will amount to 2,047,000 cubic feet,

and the embankment to 1,980,000; an apparent surplus of 67,000 cubic feet; but since, in order to allow for the shrinkage, there should be an excess of 205,000, it appears that there is really a *Wantage*, and that the grade has been raised too much; so that an elevation of only $2\frac{1}{4}$ feet at B would probably produce the desired balance.

TRANSVERSE BALANCING.

When the road lies along the side of a slope, so that it is partly in excavation and partly in embankment, it is ne-

Fig. 58.



cessary so to place its centre line, that these two parts of its cross-section may balance. When the ground has a uniform slope, the desired end would be obtained (if the side slopes were the same for excavation and embankment, and if no "shrinkage" existed) by locating the centre line of the road on the surface of the ground. In other cases, as when the side of the excavation slopes 1 to 1, and that of the embankment 2 to 1, a formula to determine the position of the centre line of the road may be readily established.

If earth be wanted for a neighboring embankment, the amount of excavation may be easily increased by moving the road farther into the hill, with the additional advantage of lessening its liability to slip. The line may be thus

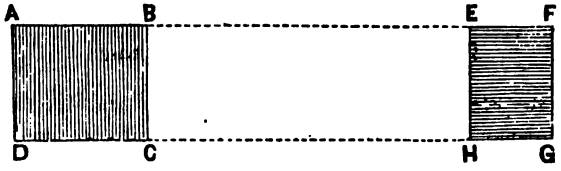
changed on the map, according to the notes of cross-sections in the level book, and be subsequently moved, by a corresponding quantity, on the ground.

When the slope of the ground is very steep, the transverse balancing must be disregarded, and the road made chiefly in excavation, to avoid the insecurity of a high embankment, as will be explained under "Construction."

DISTANCES OF TRANSPORT.

The *equality* of the masses of excavation and embankment is not the only consideration. The *distances* to which it is necessary to transport the earth which is moved, must also be taken into the account. Suppose that a mass of earth, whose surface is ABCD, is to be

Fig. 59.



removed to the embankment whose surface is EFGH, and which has a thickness sufficient to make the two masses equal. The *mean distance* of the transport is required. Conceive the mass ABCD divided into a very great number of smaller masses. The sum of the products of these portions, by the distance which each of them is actually moved, will equal the product of the sum of the portions (*i. e.* of the whole mass) by the mean distance. The mean distance therefore equals the above sum of products divided by the whole mass.*

In such cases as usually occur on a road, in which the

* Gayffier, p. 122.

cubes of excavation and embankment are comprised between two parallel planes, whose horizontal traces are ABEF and DCHG, and in which sections made by other planes, parallel to the first, cut off equal partial volumes, we know, from the principles of mechanics, that the mean distance desired is equal to the distance of the centres of gravity of the two volumes. In the simple example above, the mean distance of transport would be the distance between the centres of the two rectangles.

The methods of apportioning the excavations among different embankments, which ought to be adopted in more complicated cases of various distances of transport, in order to attain the minimum of labor and expense, will be considered in the next chapter, which treats of actual "Construction."

7. ESTIMATE OF THE COST OF A ROAD.

A minute and careful estimate of every possible source of expense in the construction of a road, is a very important element in determining its location. The principal items are the Earthwork, Land, Mechanical structures, Engineering, and Contingencies.

EARTHWORK.

The amount of "Earthwork," or excavation and embankment, is supposed to have been determined by the preceding calculations. Its cost per cubic yard depends on the *wages* of labor, the *quality* of the earth, and the *distance* over which it is moved.

Wages. The daily wages of an ordinary laboring man vary of course with the locality and the season, and range from 50 cents to $1.25. In making the estimate, it must

not be overlooked, that if wages are at that time unusually low, they will be likely to rise, if the work be so large in amount as to make the demand for labor exceed the supply.

Quality. The amount of labor required, for breaking up and removing any given volume of earth, will of course depend upon its degree of compactness and cohesiveness, which is termed its "*quality.*" This is estimated by the proportion between the number of picks in use, and the number of shovels which these picks will keep constantly employed. Thus, if the earth be so loose that it can be shovelled up without being loosened by the pick, it is called "earth of one man." If it be so hard as to require one picker, or "getter," to be constantly employed, to keep one shoveller, or "filler," at work, it is called "earth of two men." If one "getter" can keep two "fillers" busy, it is "earth of $1\frac{1}{2}$ men;" its nomenclature being formed by dividing the total number of men employed by the number of volumes of earth removed. The "quality" of earth can be accurately determined only by actual experiment, though it may be estimated with tolerable precision by an experienced eye. In deep cuts, borings should be made, or shafts sunk, to ascertain the nature of the lower strata. In this examination a knowledge of the geological arrangement of the district will be of great assistance.

An average laborer can shovel into a cart, in a day of ten hours, from 10 to 14 cubic yards, *measured in the embankment*, of earth previously loosened with a pick or plough. Of hard and firm gravelly earth, or gravel and clay mixed, he can load 10 cubic yards; of loam, (sand and clay) 12 cubic yards; and of sandy earth 14 cubic yards.* To loosen the earth will cost from 1 to 8 cents

* Journal of Franklin Institute, September, 1841.

per cubic yard; the hardest earth requires to be picked; the others may be ploughed; and some sandy earth does not require any loosening, but may be shovelled up at once. At wages of one dollar per day, the cost of shovelling into a cart would therefore be from 7 to 10 cents per cubic yard; to which the cost of loosening must be added. If it were "earth of two men," it would cost double. The excavation of rock will cost from 50 cents to $1.00, according to its hardness, and the disposition of its seams.

The following table shows the number of cubic yards which can be loosened, loaded, &c., by an average laborer, in a day of 10 hours.*

NATURE OF THE WORK.	CHARACTER OF THE MATERIAL.					
	Common Earth.	Loose and light earth.	Mud.	Clay and stony earth.	Compact Gravel.	Rock, (blasted)
Digging up, or Loosening.	18 to 23	16		9	7 to 11	2.4
Excavation; including throwing 6 to 12 feet.	8 to 12	8	7 to 16	4		2.2
Loading in barrows.	22		8		19	
Transport by barrows; per hundred feet.	20 to 33				24 to 28	
Loading in carts.	16 to 48				17 to 27	10
Spreading and Levelling.	44 to 88		25		30 to 80	

* Deduced from the experiments of M. Ancelin.

The cost per cubic yard of each kind of labor will be readily obtained by dividing the days' wages by the number of cubic yards in the table.

The cost of throwing with the shovel is usually one-third of that of digging up.

From 90 to 120 square yards of surface of embankment can be "trimmed" in a day.

When the net cost of performing any work has been ascertained, one twentieth of it should be added for the cost of tools, superintendence, &c.; and one tenth of the whole for the profits of the contractor.

Distance. The third element in the price of earthwork is the distance to which the excavations must be removed. If the road be on a side-hill, and be so located that the excavation from its upper side can be at once thrown over to make the embankment on its lower side, the cost will be little more than that of the simple excavation. But usually large amounts of earth require to be removed considerable distances, with great increase of expense. The methods to be employed will vary with the circumstances of the case, as will be explained under the head of "Construction."

The comparative cost, per cubic yard, (according to experiments made at Fort Adams, Newport, R. I.) of excavating earth, and removing it to various distances, with wheelbarrows, one-horse carts, and ox-carts, is given by the following table, which includes the cost of loosening, filling, and dropping; and estimates a laborer's wages at $1.00 per day of 10 hours; a horse, cart, and driver, at $1.34 per day of 9 hours; and an ox-team and driver $1.60 per day of 9 hours. The earth was ploughed up at a cost of $\frac{3}{4}$ cent per cubic yard.

DISTANCES IN FEET.	COST IN CENTS PER CUBIC YARD.		
	Wheelbarrow.	One-horse cart.	Ox-cart.
30	5.5	8.2	8.6
60	6.9	8.4	8.8
90	8.2	8.6	8.9
120	9.5	8.8	9.1
150	10.9	9.0	9.3
180	12.2	9.2	9.4
210	13.5	9.4	9.6
240	14.8	9.6	9.8
300	17.5	10.0	10.1
450	24.2	11.0	10.9
600	30.8	12.0	11.8
900	44.1	14.0	13.4
1200	57.4	16.0	15.1
1500	70.7	18.0	16.8

From the preceding table it appears, that, with its data, the cost, after loading, of removing the earth 100 feet, was, in barrows, 4.43 cents per cubic yard; in one-horse carts, .66 cent; and in ox-carts, .56 cent.

Some accurate experiments on the Birmingham and Gloucester Railway* make the cost in barrows, per 100 feet, at $1.00 per day, $\frac{1}{2\,2\,5}$ = 3.4 cents; the experiments of M. Ancelin† give $\frac{1}{3\,3}$ to $\frac{1}{2\,6}$ = 3 to 5 cents; the American translator of Sganzin‡ $\frac{1}{1\,8}$ = 5½ cents.

It is usual in barrow-work, to consider any *vertical* transport of the earth as costing eighteen times as much as the same number of feet of horizontal distance; though from accurate experiments it seems that the ratio should be as 24 to 1 for barrows, and as 14 to 1 for horse-carts.§

* Laws of Excavation and Embankment on Railways, p. 136.

† See page 126. ‡ Page 110. § Gayffier, p. 146.

The cost of transport by any method will be expressed by the formula—

$$\frac{P\,(2D + d)}{L \times C},$$

in which P = price of day's work of the vehicle and its driver.

D = mean distance of transport.

d = distance which could have been gone over in the time consumed in each filling and emptying.

L = the distance which would be gone over in a day by the vehicle, proceeding without interruption at its average pace; usually between twenty and twenty-five miles, or between 100,000 and 130,000 feet.

C = the cubic contents of the load, expressed in fractional parts of a cubic yard.

If P = 134, D = 1500, d = 1000, L = 100,000, and C = $\frac{1}{2}$, the formula becomes $\frac{134\,(3000 + 1000)}{100{,}000 \times \frac{1}{2}} = 10.7$ cents.*

The complete cost, with one-horse carts, of excavating earth, transporting it, and forming an embankment, is very completely expressed in a *formula* enunciated in the Journal of the Franklin Institute for September, 1841, by Ellwood Morris, C. E.

The average pace of a horse carting embankment is taken at 100 feet of trip, and back, per minute; and the time lost in loading, dumping, &c., at four minutes per load.

For the variable quantities the following symbols are employed:—

a = number of feet in the average haul, or "lead," of the embankment.

* For a table thus calculated, see Marlette, p. 91.

b = number of hours worked per day.

c = daily wages of laborer, in cents.

d = " " cart, including driver and all expenses of carting.

e = cost of loosening materials, in cents, per cubic yard; ranging from one to eight, as stated on page 125.

f = number of cart-loads required to form a cubic yard of bank. Usually 3 on a descending road, $3\frac{1}{2}$ on a level, and 4 on an ascending road.

g = number of cubic yards which a medium laborer will load into a cart per day, ranging from ten to fourteen, as stated on page 125.

Then the minutes in the day's work $= 60\,b$;

The minutes consumed in each trip $= \frac{a}{100}$;

The number of trips, or loads hauled per day, is

$$= \frac{60b}{\frac{a}{100} + 4,};$$

The number of cubic yards hauled per day, is

$$= \frac{60b}{f\left(\frac{a}{100} + 4\right)};$$

The cost of hauling, per cubic yard, is

$$= d \div \frac{60b}{f\left(\frac{a}{100} + 4\right)} = \frac{df\left(\frac{a}{100} + 4\right)}{60b} \qquad [A].$$

Adding to this the cost of excavation $= \frac{c}{g}$, that of loosening $= e$, and that of trimming $= 1$ cent, we obtain, for the total cost of a cubic yard of embankment,

$$e + \frac{c}{g} + \frac{df\left(\frac{a}{100}+4\right)}{60b} + 1 \qquad [B].$$

Applying it to an actual case, in which $a = 1000$, $b = 10$, $c = 125$, $d = 175$, $e = 2\frac{1}{2}$, $f = 3\frac{1}{2}$, $g = 12$, the formula [A] for the cost of hauling, becomes—

$$\frac{175 \times 3\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1000}{100}+4\right)}{60 \times 10} = 14.3 \text{ cents};$$

and the formula [B], for the total cost of a cubic yard of embankment, becomes—

$$2.5 + \frac{125}{12} + 14.3 + 1 = 28.2 \text{ cents.}$$

The actual cost, with these data, on an amount of 22,000 yards, was 27.9 cents, differing from the calculation only three-tenths of a cent; and on a total amount of 150,000 yards, the actual and calculated costs in no case differed more than one cent.

An easy approximate rule for the average cost of hauling one cubic yard any distance on a level, with such carts and rates of travel as those above referred to, may be deduced from formula A:—

For 300 feet divide the wages of cart and driver by 24

500	"	"	19
1000	"	"	12
1500	"	"	9
2000	"	"	7
2500	"	"	6
3000	"	"	5

The greater the distance of the haul, the less is the proportional cost, in consequence of less time being lost in filling and dropping.

In excavation and embankment with the *scraper* or *scoop*, (the use of which will be explained under the head of Construction) the number of cubic yards moved per day of ten hours, a distance expressed by a feet (adding vertical height to horizontal distance) $= \frac{4200}{a + 93\frac{1}{3}}$.* If the wages of scraper and driver be denoted by c cents, and cost of loosening by d, the cost per cubic yard $= d + \frac{c\,(a + 93\frac{1}{3})}{4200}$. When $a' = 55$, $c = 275$, and $d = 1$, the cost becomes—

$$1 + \frac{275\,(55 + 93\frac{1}{3})}{4200} = 1 + 9.7 = 10.7 \text{ cents.}$$

When an *embankment* is made of earth carried beyond a certain distance, (usually 100 feet in the direction of the length of the road) it is paid for *twice;* once as excavation and once as embankment, according to prices previously stipulated; but when carried less than this distance, (as when thrown from the upper to the lower side of a road which is half in cutting and half in filling) only one price, that of the excavation, is estimated for; and the amount of embankment in this situation must be subtracted from the total amount, before multiplying this by the embankment price. If a portion of an embankment is required to be made of some peculiar material, which can be obtained only from a greater distance than the other materials of the bank, a separate and higher price should be estimated for it.

In our estimate, thus far, we have determined only the cost of the excavation and embankment.

The *land* to be occupied by the road is another important item. The quantity to be taken having been calcu-

* Journal of Franklin Institute, October, 1841.

lated, with due allowance for the extra width of the cuttings and fillings, is to be reduced to acres in agricultural districts, and to square feet in towns and villages. Its value, if not settled by agreement, must be determined by appraisers, who are, however, naturally too much inclined to favor the interests of private individuals to the prejudice of the company, or public body, which constitutes the opposite party, subjecting them to the payment of extravagant compensations.

The cost of *fencing* will vary with the locality.

The *mechanical structures*, as bridges, culverts, &c, if numerous and large, add greatly to the cost of the road; but, if important, must be confided to a professional engineer.

The stonework is usually paid for by the cubic yard, but in some parts of the country by the "perch," of 25 cubic feet.* Wood is paid for by the cubic foot, or "solid measure," when no one of its dimensions is as small as some conventional limit, which is usually 4 inches; but "board measure" (one-twelfth of the former) is employed when the wood is 4 inches, or less, in any of its dimensions. "Running measure," referring to length only, is used for simple constructions, which have small and regular cross-sections, as ditches, piles, &c.

The *Engineering* expenses, including laying out, superintendence, office-work, &c., are usually estimated at 10 per cent. upon the amount of the other items.

Every possible source of expense should be taken into the account, and an ample price for each allowed; but, finally, at least 10 per cent., upon the total amount, must be added for *Contingencies*.

* More precisely 24¾ feet, its standard being a rubble wall, 16½ feet long, and 18 inches thick.

Even then the actual expense will generally exceed the estimate.* For this opprobrium of the engineering profession there are many causes.

The *price of labor*, as the work proceeds, particularly if it be one of magnitude, may rise far above what it was at the time of the estimate.

In a deep cutting, *rock* may be found, where earth was expected, and the cost of that part of the excavation will therefore be increased tenfold.

Many *improvements* in the plan of the work are suggested and adopted as it proceeds; almost always with an increase of cost.

Finally, it must be confessed that many incidental expenses, trifling in themselves, but considerable in their aggregate, rarely fail to be overlooked in the original estimate.

8. FINAL LOCATION OF THE LINE.

When the preceding operations of measuring, mapping, and calculating, have been performed upon each of the various lines of communication between the two extremities of the route, which have been considered worth surveying, their relative merits are to be examined. One may be shorter; another more level; a third may require less earthwork, and so on. The good and bad points of each route are to be compared by the principles laid down on pages 68 and 69, and that one adopted which will enable the most labor to be performed on it with the least

* On the twenty principal railroads in England, the average proportion of the actual cost to the original estimate was as 2¼ to 1. The least variation was 62 per cent excess; in the greatest, the cost was nearly six times the estimate.

number of horses, provided the expense of its construction fall within the limits established by calculation, or by necessity.* The persons who are to make the selection and decision should have before them,

1. A general map of the localities.
2. A profile of each line.
3. Cross-sections at short intervals.
4. The calculations of excavation and embankment.
5. Drawings of the bridges, culverts, &c.
6. Specifications of all the works.
7. Amounts of stone-work, timber, &c.
8. Analysis of the prices of each.
9. Estimate of cost.
10. Estimate of revenue.
11. Descriptive memoir.

The *final location* of the line adopted is then to be made. It consists chiefly in—

1. Rectification of the straight portions of the line.
2. Laying out its curves.
3. Staking out its side-slopes.

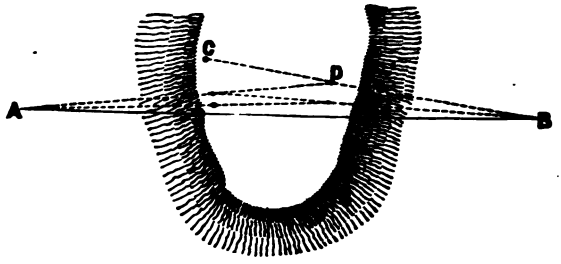
RECTIFICATION.

The minor irregularities, bends, and zigzags of the line (caused in part by the transverse balancing) may often be removed by substituting for them one straight line, which will be the average of their deviations on either side. A flagstaff being placed at one end of the line, an observer, at the other end, by signals directs assistants to place "in line" the rods which they bear; and the points thus found are marked by stakes, which are usually driven at every hundred feet. In the case of long lines, through a coun-

* Parnell, pp. 322, 433.

try of forests, the use of the compass, or some other angular instrument, is almost indispensable, for it is still an unsolved problem in engineering, how, without the aid of these, the Romans attained the wonderful straightness with which they carried their roads over thickly-wooded hills and valleys, with such lofty disdain of the effects of gravity.

Fig. 60.



When a hill rising between two points, as A and B, prevents one being seen from the other, two observers C and D may place themselves on the ridge, as nearly as possible in the line between the two points, and so that each can at once see the other and the point beyond. C looks to B, and by signals puts D "in line." D then looks to A, and puts C in line. C repeats his operation, and so they alternately "line" each other, continually approximating to the straight line between A and B, till they at last find themselves both exactly in it.

When a wood, or some such obstacle, intervenes between the two points, as in Fig. 61, a different method must be adopted. The direction from A to B not being exactly known, leaving a rod at A, set up another at C, as nearly in the desired line as possible. Go on as far as the two rods at A and C can be seen, and set up another at D, "in line" with A and C. Go on beyond D, and place another rod,

Fig. 61.



E, in line with D and C; and so proceed, producing the straight line till it arrives at Z, opposite B. Measure the distance ZB, and move the stakes C, D, E, &c., towards the true line by a quantity proportional to their distances from A. Thus if AZ be 1000 feet, and ZB, the final divergence, be ten feet, a stake C, 200 feet from A, should be moved two feet to C′, in order to bring it into the true line AB; and so, proportionally, with the rest.

CURVES.

The angles, which are formed by the meeting of the straight lines, established in the *approximate* location of the road, must be rounded by curves, to which the straight lines must be tangents at their points of junction.

On every curve there is an unavoidable *loss of power* in the deflection of vehicles from the straight line which all bodies in motion tend to follow; and there is *danger* from the effects of the centrifugal force. The resistance is inversely as the radius of the curve, *i. e.*, greater as the radius of the curve is smaller; for the force required to draw a carriage around a curve may be considered as composed of two portions; one equal to the force which would be required to draw it over a straight line of the same length as the curve, and the other dependent on the additional power necessary, at each instant, to draw it into the curved line from the tangent in which it tends to

move. A certain amount of force being required to produce the entire change in direction, the smaller the radius of a curve, the less space and time is given for the exercise of this force, and a larger share of it must therefore be exerted at each moment, with a great increase of labor and danger.

It is therefore very important that every road-curve should have as great a radius as possible. It should never be less than one hundred feet.

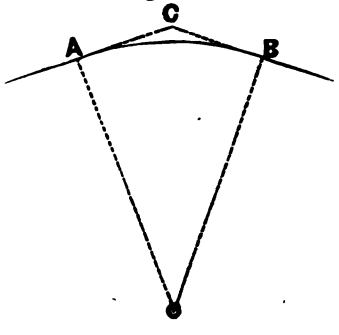
When a curve is necessary upon a steep grade, the inclination should be flattened at that place in order to compensate for the additional resistance of the curve. On this account a zigzag line up a hill is more objectionable than an oblique ascent by a straight line.

The curves which are employed to unite straight lines are usually either circular or parabolic arcs.

CIRCULAR ARCS.

Having given two straight lines meeting at C, (or which would so meet, if produced) it is required to mark out on the ground an arc of a circle to which these lines shall be tangents.

Fig. 62.



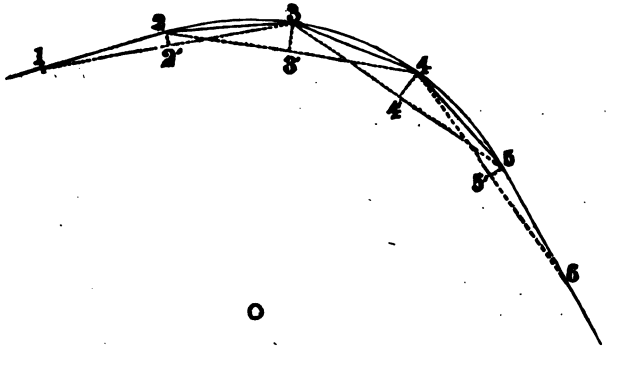
The simplest mode for an arc of small radius would be to find the centre, by erecting perpendiculars to the tangent lines at equal distances, A and B, from their point of meeting C. The intersection, O, of the perpendiculars would be the centre, from which the arc

might be swept with a cord of proper length. But curves are often employed with a radius of one or more miles, so that this method would seldom be practicable. The curve must therefore be traced independently of its centre.

In practice, instead of a circle, a polygon is marked out, with sides or chords each one hundred feet long. Stakes are set at the ends of each of these chords, and are therefore in the circumference of the desired circle. The chords themselves, in circles of large radius, will nearly coincide with the arcs.

The question is now, in what manner to fix the position of these chords. Two methods are in common use; one by "angles of deflection," and the other by "versed sines." The former is generally employed upon railroads, but requires the use of an angular instrument.* The latter dispenses with this, and is therefore the one which will be here explained.

Fig. 63.



* For its details, see Col. Long, Mifflin, Vandegraaf, Johnson, &c.

The stations are supposed to be at equal distances (each of which is usually a chain of 100 feet) and the versed sine to be given, or to have been found by trial. Assume it at two feet, and let station 2 be the point at which the curve is to begin. From station 2 measure inward, towards the centre, half the versed sine (or one foot) to 2′, and place there a rod. Stretch out the chain from 2, and bring its farther extremity into the line of 2′ and the back station 1, and it will fix station 3, at which a stake is to be driven. From 3 measure inward the full versed sine to 3′; draw on the chain till its extremity is in line with 3′ and 2, and it fixes station 4. So proceed, measuring inward the full versed sine, at each station, till you arrive at the station (5, in the figure) where it is desired to end the curve, and to pass off on a tangent. There only *half* the versed sine is to be used. Station 6 is thus found, and the line 5.....6 gives the direction of the final tangent, as 2.....1 gave that of the initial one. The stations 2, 3, 4, 5, thus found, will be points in the circumference of a circle to which the lines 1.....2 and 5.....6 are tangents.

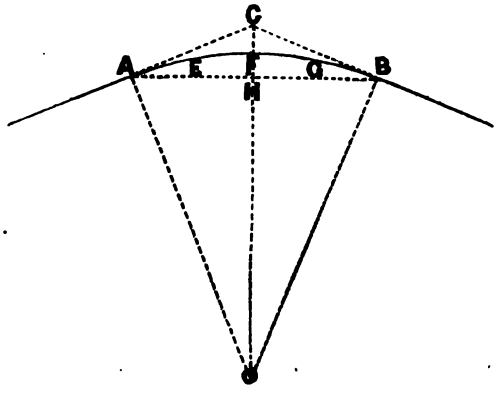
The versed sine has been thus far supposed to be known. To calculate it from the angle of two meeting lines, the following problems are required.

Problem 1. To find the radius of the circular arc which unites two straight lines meeting at a given angle, the distance from their intersection to the initial and final points of the curve being also given.

In figure 64, ACB is the given angle, and A and B the initial and final points, at equal distances from the point of intersection. The triangle CBO, right-angled at B, gives

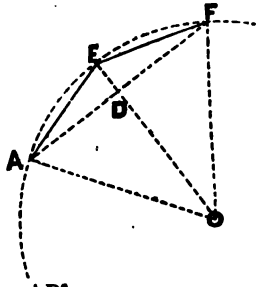
$$BO = \frac{\text{tan. BCO} \times \text{BC}}{\text{rad.}}, \text{ i. e.—}$$

Fig. 64.



The required radius is equal to the natural tangent (to radius unity) of half the given angle, multiplied by the distance from the intersection to the beginning or ending of the curve.

Fig. 65.



Problem 2. To find the versed sine, having given the radius.

Given the radius OA or OF, and any two equal chords, AE, and EF, required the versed sine ED.

$$ED^2 = AE^2 - AD^2$$

$$AD^2 = AO^2 - DO^2 = AO^2 - (EO - ED)^2 =$$

$$= AO^2 - (AO - ED)^2 =$$

$$= AO^2 - AO^2 + 2AO \cdot ED - ED^2 = 2AO \cdot ED - ED^2.$$

$$\therefore ED^2 = AE^2 - 2AO \cdot ED + ED^2$$

$$2AO \cdot ED = AE^2$$

$$ED = \frac{AE^2}{2AO};$$

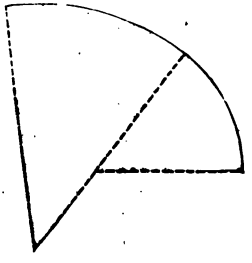
i. e., the versed sine is equal to the square of the chord, divided by twice the radius. When AE = 100 feet, the versed sine is equal to 5000 feet divided by the number of feet in the

radius. When AE = 66 feet, the versed sine equals 2178 feet divided by the radius.

When the lines, which are to be united by a curve, do not actually meet, the angle which their directions form may be readily calculated; but after a little practice it will be easier to assume some versed sine; to run a trial curve with it; and after ascertaining whether it be too large or too small, to assume another nearer the proper one, and so proceed.*

Compound Curves. The above method supposes that the curve has the same radius, or degree of curvature, throughout, and that it unites the two tangents at equal distances from their intersection. But it is often required to increase or to lessen the degree of curvature, and thus to form a "compound curve," as in the figure. To effect this, at the station where the change is to be made, use, for measuring inward, half the sum of the old and new versed sine, and thence proceed with the new one only. Thus, if 2 feet has been the original versed sine, and the features of the ground which is next to be passed over require a curve of 6 feet versed sine to be employed, at the desired point use a versed sine of 4 feet, and thenceforward one of 6 feet. If the curvature is to be lessened, the same rule applies.

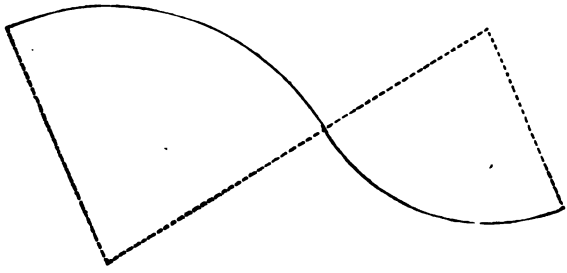
Fig. 66.



Reversed Curves. It is sometimes necessary to reverse the direction of a curve, and to commence curving in a contrary manner, without allowing a straight line to in-

* It is often desirable to know how far the curve will depart from the intersection of the tangent lines. In figure 64, the distance required = FC = OC − OF = $\sqrt{(OA^2 + AC^2)} - OA$.

Fig. 67

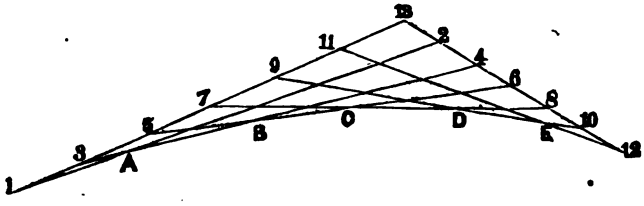


tervene. At one chain beyond the point at which it is desired to make the change, place a stake in the line of the two last, and at it begin to use the proper versed sine in the contrary direction.

PARABOLIC ARCS.

The following method furnishes an easy means of obtaining a Parabolic curve.

Fig. 68.



Divide the two tangent lines 1....13, and 13....12, (whether of equal or different lengths) into the same number of equal parts, as many as may be thought necessary. Number the points of division on one tangent with the odd numbers 1, 3, 5, &c., up to the vertex; and on the other tangent number them, from the vertex, with the even numbers 2, 4, 6, &c. Join the points 1 and 2, 3 and 4, 5 and 6,

and so on; and the inner intersections A, B, C, D, E, will be points in the curve desired.

To fix the points of this curve upon the ground, tall stakes must be placed at each of the points of division of one of the tangent lines, and two men be stationed on the other. One places himself at station 1, and directs his eyes to station 2. The other places himself at 3, and looks to 4. A third man, holding a rod, is moved, by alternate signals from each of the others, till he comes to a point which is in both their lines of sight at once. This will be the point A. The man at 1 now passes to 5, and looks to 6, the other remaining at 3. The rodman, being again placed in both their lines of sight, thus fixes the point B. The remaining points are similarly determined.

The Parabolic curve, though little used in this country, is generally preferred in France, and has the following advantages over a circular arc.

It approaches nearer to the intersection of the tangent lines; and as they are supposed to have been originally placed on the most favorable ground, the less the curve deviates from them, the less increase of cutting and filling will it cause. The more numerous the divisions, the nearer does it approach the tangents.

Its curvature is least at its beginning and its ending, so that its deviation from the straight line is less strongly marked.

It can join two straight lines of unequal length, as in the figure; while a circular arc, of constant radius, requires both the tangents to meet it at equal distances from their intersection.

STAKING OUT THE SIDE-SLOPES.

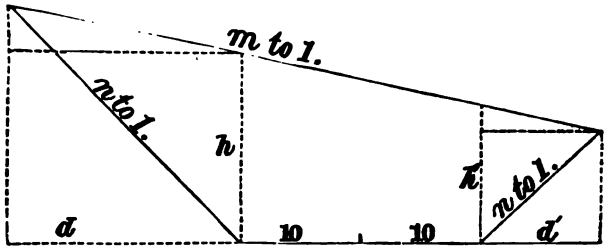
The "line" which has been so often spoken of, is the centre-line of the road—its axis—and the stakes which have now been set at every hundred feet, on both straight lines and curves, have marked out only this centre line. Before the "Construction" of the road is commenced, other stakes must be set to show how far on each side of the centre line the cuttings and fillings will extend. The *data* required are the width of the road, the depth of the necessary cuttings or fillings, and the ratio of the side-slopes to unity.

Assume that the road is to be 20 feet wide, the slopes 2 to 1, and the cutting 6 feet. Add half the bottom width to twice the depth, and the sum, $(10 + 2 \times 6) = 22$, is the "distance out" from the centre stakes, at which the cutting stakes must be set. They should be marked "6.+," or "Cut 6," and be driven obliquely, so as to point in the direction of the slope. If the road had been in filling, the "distance out," would have been the same, but the stakes would have been marked "6.—," or "Fill 6."

Staking out the side-slopes is thus seen to be very easy when the ground is level in its cross-section. But when it is side-long, farther calculations, or repeated trials with a levelling instrument, are required to find the "distance out" which will correspond to the height of the ground above or below the grade line at that precise distance out.

A general formula for any case may be readily investigated. Examining first the up-hill side, and calling the slope of the ground m to 1; that of the side slopes n to 1: the desired distance from the bottom angle of the cutting, d; and the height

Fig. 69.



of the ground above that bottom angle h; we obtain, (as on page 121)

$\frac{d}{n} = h + \frac{d}{m}$; whence $d = h.\ \frac{mn}{m-n}$.

If $h = 6$, $n = 2$, and $m = 10$, $d = 6 \times \frac{20}{8} = 15$. Then the up-hill cutting stake will be $10 + 15 = 25$ feet from the centre stake.

Examining next the down-hill side, and using a symmetrical notation, we have $\frac{d'}{n} = h' - \frac{d'}{m}$, whence $d' = h'.\ \frac{mn}{m+n}$. Let $h' = 4$, $n = 2$, and $m = 10$, $d' = 4 \times \frac{20}{12} = 6.7$, and the "distance out" of the down-hill stake will be $10 + 6.7 = 16.7$ from centre.

Cases of embankment will be represented by the above figure inverted.

CHAPTER III.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF ROADS.

"The torrent stops it not; the rugged rock
Opens, and lets it in; and on it runs,
Winning its easy way from clime to clime,
Through glens lock'd up before."

ROGERS.

CONTRACTS.

THE actual "Construction" of a road, after its "Location" has been completed, may be carried on by days' work, under the superintendence of the agents of the company, or town, by which it has been undertaken; but it will be more economically executed by CONTRACT. A "*Specification*" is first to be prepared, containing an exact and minute description of the manner of executing the work in all its details. Copies of it, with maps, profiles, and drawings of the proposed road, &c., are to be submitted to the inspection of the persons desiring to undertake it, who are to be invited by advertisement to hand in sealed tenders of the prices per cubic yard (or other unit of measurement) at which they will agree to perform the work. The proposals are opened on the appointed day, and the lowest are accepted, other things being equal. The "*Contract*," which is to be then signed by the parties, should contain copious and stringent conditions as to the time and manner of performing the work; stipulating when it is to be commenced, how rapidly to progress, in what order of parts, and when to be completed; which

of the incidental expenses are to be borne by the contractor, and for which he is to be remunerated; in what cases material carried from excavation into embankment is to be paid for at the united prices of both; what penalties for neglect are to be imposed; when payments for work done are to be made; and so on; always remembering that every thing must be expressed, and nothing left to be inferred.*

The specification is considered to form part of the contract, and a "Bond" is appended, by which the contractor and his sureties are "holden and firmly bound" in a penal sum, "this bond to be null and void, if the said parties shall faithfully execute and fulfil the accompanying Contract."

Each contract should include such a length of road, called "a section," (usually half a mile or a mile long) that materials for the embankments may be obtained from cuttings within its limits. There should be separate contracts for the mechanical structures required. The works which will need most time for their execution should be commenced first; but no contract should be let, till the land which it includes is secured, or exorbitant demands will be made.

It has been said that the lowest bid is usually accepted, but this is to be taken with great qualifications. The

* In the contracts for the public works of the state of New York, one valuable paragraph comprehends every thing, saying, "To prevent all disputes, it is hereby agreed, that the engineer shall in all cases determine the amount or quantity of the several kinds of work which are to be paid for under this contract, and the amount of compensation at contract prices to be paid therefor; and also that said engineer shall in all cases decide every question, which can or may arise, relating to the execution of this contract on the part of the said contractor, and his estimate and decision shall be final and conclusive."

skill, competency, character, and responsibility of the contractor are as important as the lowness of his prices. A skilful and experienced contractor will often make a profit on a work, which another has abandoned after considerable loss. Bids, less than the actual cost of the work, are often made, both from ignorance and from knavery. In the former case, if the proposals were accepted, the contractor would be ruined, and obliged to leave the work unfinished; in the latter, he would hope to gain something by doing first the easy and profitable parts of the work, and then abandoning it. In both cases the remaining portions would be executed at greatly increased expense. Six contracts in England amounting to $3,000,000 being abandoned, were finished by the company, and cost them $6,000,000. The engineer should therefore ascertain the lowest amount for which the work can be done, and not let it for less.

The work done is usually paid for monthly, according to a measurement made by the inspecting engineer. Five or ten per cent is generally retained till the completion of the contract.

The two main divisions of the operations necessary in the construction of a road, are its *earthwork* and its *mechanical structures*.

1. EARTHWORK.

The term *earthwork* is applied to all the operations in excavation and embankment, whatever the material.

REMOVAL OF THE EARTH.

The problem which is to be solved, both in theory and practice, is, "To remove every portion of earth from the

excavation to the embankment by the shortest distance, in the shortest time, and at the least expense."

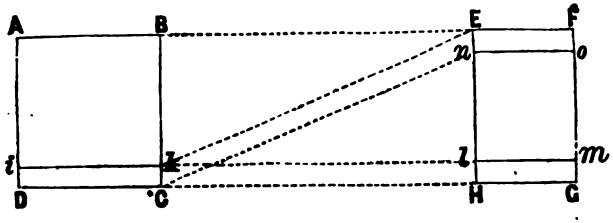
It must also be deposited so as to form a consolidated mass, and so that not a particle of it will need to be again moved.

The problem is very important in practice, for upon its mode of solution depends a large portion of the cost of the work; and in theory, it requires the aid of the higher Calculus, since, to satisfy its conditions, the sum of the products, arising from multiplying all the elementary volumes of earth into the distances which they are carried, must be a *minimum*.

We have seen, on page 123, that in the simplest case, that in which the whole of one excavation is to be carried into one embankment, we may use the product of the entire mass multiplied by the distance of the centres of gravity of its two positions. But when certain portions of a cutting are to be deposited in spoil-banks; others to form part of an embankment, of which the remainder is to be obtained from side-cuttings; &c., it does not appear *à priori* what arrangement would give a minimum expense. In a few cases the proper course is evident; as, if a hill is to be cut down, and its materials serve only to fill up a valley, and are in excess, the excavation from its summit is clearly the portion to be deposited in spoil-bank; if the materials are insufficient to form the embankment, it is the part most distant from the hill which should be formed from a side-cutting; if the excavation is to be carried in two different directions and is in excess, it is the part of the middle which should be rejected and deposited in spoil-bank.

One general principle of transport may be readily deduced. Let ABCD represent the plan of an excavation

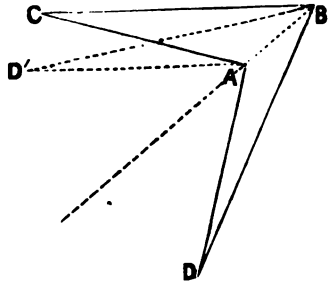
Fig. 70.



from which the embankment EFGH is to be formed. If the volume CD*ik*, instead of being taken to GH*lm*, should be transported to EF*on*, it follows that the embankment GH*lm* must be obtained from a portion of the excavation beyond the line *ik*, and that the paths of the two volumes will cross each other, which is therefore a disadvantageous disposition, since it increases the distances passed over. Any such crossing of the paths of the volumes transferred, either horizontally or vertically, may be generally avoided by conceiving the solids of excavation and embankment to be intersected by parallel planes, such as DCHG, *ik*, *lm*, &c., and by transferring the partial solids in the manner indicated by the boundaries marked out by these planes.

In many cases the most economical distribution of the earth, can be determined only by a special construction. Thus in the figure, suppose that earth is to be taken from A and B to form embankments at C and D; it is required to know which should form the embankment at C, and which that at D. To bring the case within the application of the principle

Fig. 71.



just enunciated, conceive the triangle ABD to turn around the line AB as on a hinge, so that the point D comes to occupy a point D′, symmetrical with its former position.

It is now evident that to avoid the crossing of the paths, the earth from A must be taken to D′, (*i. e.* D) and the earth from B to C; AD′ + BC being less than AC + BD′. If the point D′ had fallen beyond C the reverse would have been proper. If the point D′ had fallen within the triangle ABC, there would be no crossing in either mode of transport, but the proper one would be determined by a similar algebraic condition.*

The choice would be indifferent, if

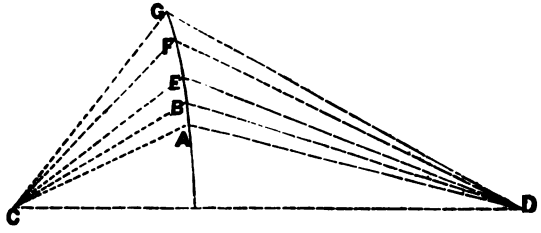
$$BC - AC = BD - AD,$$

or if $$AD - AC = BD - BC;$$

for then, $$AD + BC = AC + BD.$$

Two points, A and B, Fig. 72, being found which fulfil this condition, other points will be found at the intersection of arcs

Fig. 72.

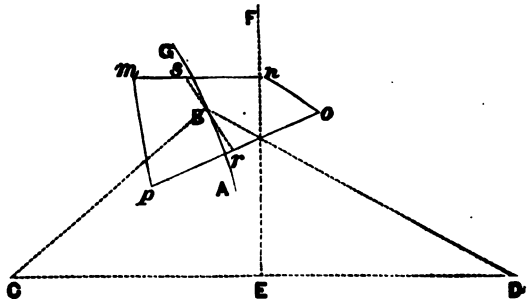


described from C and D as centres, with radii of which the differences are respectively equal to the given difference AD—AC, or BD — BC. If a great number of these points were found, the polygonal line ABEFG would become an hyperbola, possessing the remarkable property of so dividing the transportation, that C should receive all the excavation from one side of it, and D all from the other.

Suppose that embankments at C and D, Fig. 73, are to be made from a mass of earth *mnop*, just equal to them in volume. The minimum of expense will be obtained by finding the curve AG, which shall divide the area *mnop* into two parts equal to

* Gayffier, p. 134.

Fig. 73.



those required at C and D, and which shall also possess the properties enunciated in the preceding paragraph. If the line EF drawn perpendicular to CD, from its middle E, does not cut off a sufficient portion of the area to supply D, this shows that the curve will be concave towards C. Then divide geometrically the area *mnop* in the required proportion, by a straight line *rs*, inclined approximately as the curve would be, and adopt its middle point as a point of the curve. Then will BD — BC be the constant difference of radii required to find the other points of the dividing curve.

If the amount of embankment, which might be deposited at C and at D, was indefinite, and the only requirement was its most economical removal from *mnop*, then the perpendicular EF drawn from the middle of CD, would divide the area into two portions, which should be removed to the points C and D respectively nearest to each of them.

On similar principles may all such problems be resolved. Modifications of them are required, when the paths cannot be taken at will, as when a bridge, or an opening in a wall, is a point through which all the paths must pass. The number of bridges, of openings, of roads, &c., which will be most advantageous, require separate investigations.*

* See Gayffier, pp. 137 to 142.

EXCAVATION.

The excavation and removal of earth is performed, according to circumstances, by ploughs, scrapers, barrows, carts, wagons, &c., each of which will be successively considered.

LOOSENING.

Most earth will require to be *loosened* with ploughs, spades, or picks, before being shovelled into the barrow, or cart, in which it is to be removed. The side-hill plough possesses some advantages. The picks should be two feet from point to point, not more than ten or twelve pounds in weight, and very deep and strong in the eye, or socket of the handle. Light and loose soil may, however, be at once taken up with the shovel.

When the excavation is deep, the loosening may be facilitated, with a great saving of time and labor, by digging a narrow channel to a depth of five or six feet, and undermining the face of the bank thus formed, letting it fall at once into the barrows, or carts, beneath it. Its disruption is hastened by wedges driven into its upper surface. The concussion of the fall breaks up the mass into small pieces, with great economy, but not without danger to the workmen.

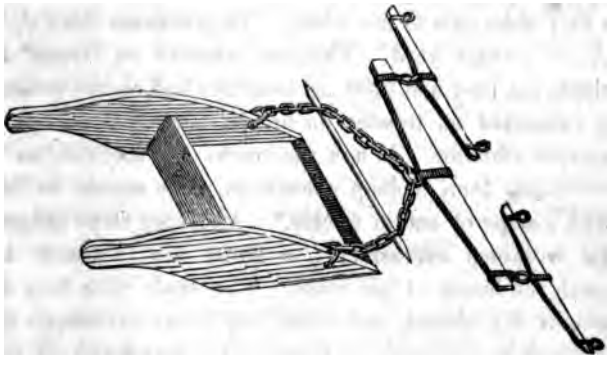
In the ordinary excavation, in which the earth is dug up, the united cohesion and weight must both be overcome; in the method just described, the weight assists in overcoming the cohesion. Representing the force of cohesion by 3, and that of the weight by 2; if both are to be overcome, as in the usual method, their resistance will be $3+2=5$; while if the weight be made to assist the workman, the resistance will be only $3-2=1$.

Steam has been applied to excavation, and a machine constructed, which can dig and load 1000 cubic yards per day, in favorable soil, at an annual cost, including interest, wear and tear, labor, &c., of $7,500, making the cost per cubic yard, $\frac{\$7,500}{300 \times 1000} = 2\frac{1}{2}$ cents.*

SCRAPER OR SCOOP.

This implement may be used with much advantage, when the earth yields readily to the plough, and is not to be moved more than 100 feet horizontally, nor to be raised to vertical heights of more than 15 feet; though these limits may sometimes be exceeded. The slopes of the banks which it forms, should not be steeper than $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 1. It usually contains $\frac{1}{1\frac{1}{2}}$ of a cubic yard.† The

Fig. 74.



ground, except when soft or sandy, requires to be previously ploughed. The scraper is drawn by two horses managed by a boy. The driver elevates the handles, and the iron-shod edge runs under the loose earth, rising up

* Journal of the Franklin Institute, September, 1843.

† Ibid. October, 1841.

again as soon as the handles are released upon its being filled. It then runs with slight resistance upon two convex iron-shod runners, which project slightly beyond its bottom, and is thus drawn to the place of deposite. At that point the driver raises the handles; its front edge catches in the earth, and its forward motion overturns it, and discharges its load. The horses keep moving; and the scoop is dragged back to the place of excavation, in its inverted position, the handles resting on the tree. It is there loaded, &c., as before.

BARROW-WHEELING.

For excavations of moderate depths, and for distances within certain limits, *barrows* are most conveniently employed. To facilitate emptying their contents, the barrows are made very shallow, with splaying sides, and with a very short axis to the wheel. They contain from $\frac{1}{20}$ to $\frac{1}{10}$ of a cubic yard. They are wheeled on "runs" of plank, (as long and thick as possible) laid on the ground, or supported on trestles, or horses, numerous enough to prevent vibration. When the tracks are inclined, as in ascending from a deep excavation, they should be laid with a slope of one in twelve.* A steeper slope fatigues the workman excessively; a flatter one increases too much the length of his route. The same man does not usually dig, shovel, and wheel, but great advantages are obtained by a division of labor. One man picks, (if that be required) a second shovels into the barrow which stands on the edge of the excavation, and a third wheels the barrow to the place of deposite, or to the next "stage," according to the distance. In the latter case, at the end of

* Dupin. *Applications de la Géometrie.*

the "stage," he meets another wheeler, returning with an empty barrow. The two there exchange their barrows; the second man wheels on the loaded one over another stage, while the first man returns with the empty barrow to the excavation, where he finds a loaded one, which has been filled during his absence; and so the circulation continues.

The length of the "stage" should be such, that the time, taken by the wheeler to travel over it with a loaded barrow, and to return with an empty one, should be just sufficient to enable the shoveller to fill the barrow left at the excavation. It should vary therefore with the nature of the soil; lessening, if this be easily worked, and increasing, if it offer greater resistance. On a level the length of a stage is usually from 60 to 100 feet. On an ascent of 1 in 12, it should be diminished by one-third; on a similar descent it should be increased by the same; for with this slope the labor on an ascent of 60 feet exactly equals a level stage of 90 feet.*

If the distance were not divided into stages, and one man wheeled his barrow the entire length, a number of runs would require to be laid from the excavation. Such an arrangement would be inconvenient, from its blocking up the work, and expensive, from the cost of the plank. At the point where the run terminates in the excavation, two planks are placed, diverging like the letter Y, the full and the empty barrow being wheeled on each alternately. At the meeting of two stages, a double track is laid, to form a turning-out place for the exchange of the barrows. At the place of deposite, several planks should radiate from the main track, so that the earth may be at

* Dupin. *Applications de la Géometrie.*

once evenly distributed, by being emptied from each in turn, thus saving much subsequent levelling.

Barrow-wheeling becomes too expensive after reaching a certain limiting distance of transportation. The frequent neglect of this consideration leads to much waste of labor. When earth is to be conveyed great distances, carts or wagons should be employed. The *limit* is determined by a combination of the cost of filling and of transporting. The table on page 128, makes it 100 feet; the limit in France, with barrows containing $\frac{1}{20}$ of a cubic yard, should be 200 feet; on English works, with barrows holding $\frac{1}{16}$ of a cubic yard, the limit is 300 feet. The limiting distance becomes smaller as the height to which the earth is moved becomes greater.*

CARTS, ETC.

One-horse carts may be advantageously employed for distances exceeding the sphere of barrows. For short distances, the greater proportional loss of time in filling them more than balances their economy while moving. They should be made very light, and their box be balanced on a pivot, so that when loaded they will tend to discharge themselves.† As the distance increases, *wagons*, drawn by two horses, become cheaper, and a temporary railway may often be constructed with profit.

When the length of the *lead*, (*i. e.* the distance from the face of an excavation to the head of an embankment) exceeds $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles, and the amount of earthwork is considerable, a locomotive engine may be advantageously employed to draw trains of wagons upon the rails.

* Gayffier, p. 159.

† When horses draw loads out of an excavation, the inclination of their track should not exceed 1 in 20. DUPIN. *Applications de la Géometrie.*

"*Casting up by stages*" is a method sometimes employed for removing the earth from deep excavations. A scaffold is prepared with a number of platforms, each five feet above the other, and each successive one receding, like the steps of a staircase. On each platform stands a man with a shovel. The laborer in the excavation throws the earth upon the first platform; the man there stationed throws it up to the second; and so on in succession till it reaches the surface.

Horse-runs are also resorted to in very deep excavations, where the banks are necessarily very high and steep. Upon the slope of the bank are placed two plank "runs," or tracks, reaching from the top to the bottom of the excavation. The distance between them must be a little greater than the depth of the excavation. At the top of each is a pulley, over which plays a rope, the ends of which pass down the runs. Each end of the rope is fastened to the front of a barrow, and its length is so adjusted that one barrow will be at the top of one run, while the other barrow is at the bottom of the other run. At the top of the excavation, a horse, attached to the rope, travels horizontally, alternately raising one barrow, which has been filled below, and lowering the other, which has been emptied at the top. A man has hold of each barrow to guide it in its ascent and descent, the weights of the men balancing each other. This method is advantageous for depths exceeding 20 feet.* The use of barrows in such cases, with the proper inclinations for the runs, would require too great a distance to be travelled over.

* Gauthey, ii. 197.

SPOIL-BANKS.

The spoil-banks, formed by the deposites of the surplus earth of an excavation, are usually shaped, as in the

Fig. 75.



figure, with side-slopes of $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 1. If the land which they occupy be of little value, it will be economical to extend them along the line AB, making them wider and lower within certain limits; since vertical transport costs so much more than horizontal.* The solution of the problem of *minimum* expense shows that for spoil-banks made with barrows, (slopes $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 1, and employing the customary ratio of 18 to 1, for the comparative expense of horizontal and vertical transport) the base AB should be *fifteen* times the height.†

SIDE-SLOPES.

To preserve the slopes of deep excavations from being gullied and washed down into the road, a ditch should be made along the upper edges of the cutting, in order to prevent the surface water of the neighboring land from reaching it. Upon the slopes themselves should be made ditches, called "Catch-water drains," running obliquely downwards, to receive the water of rains, and conduct it into the side ditches.

The side-slopes may be advantageously sown with grass-seed. The roots of the grass will bind the earth

* See page 128. † Gayffier, p. 162.

together, and prevent its slipping. A covering of 3 or 4 inches of good soil should be previously spread over the side-slopes, but if they are steeper than 1¾ to 1, the soil will not lie upon them. They may also be sodded; the sods being laid on, either with the grass side uppermost, or edgewise, with their faces at right angles to the slope. The latter, "Edge-sodding," is the most efficient, but most expensive.

TUNNELING.

When the excavation exceeds a certain depth, it will be cheaper to make a tunnel as a substitute. The amount of excavation will be much less, but the cost of each yard of it will be much greater. Calculation in each case can alone decide at what depth it would be economical to abandon the open excavation, and to commence the tunnel. Sixty feet is an approximate limit in ordinary earth. The necessity for tunnels seldom occurs, however, in the construction of common roads, though frequent in the great roads of the Alps, and on railroads; in the chapter devoted to which they will therefore be more fully noticed.

BLASTING.

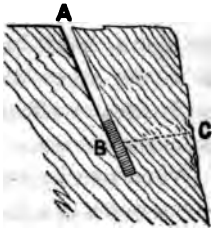
Not only rock, but frozen earth, and sometimes very compact clay, are removed by blasting with powder. The holes are drilled by a long iron bar of the hardest steel, chisel-edged, which is raised and let fall on the desired point, and at each stroke turned partially around, so that the cuts cross each other like the rays of a star *. The holes are made from 1 to 3 inches in diameter, and from 1 to 4 feet deep. One man can drill in a day 18 inches, of one 3 inches in diameter, in rock of average hardness. When water percolates into the hole, it must

be dried with oakum and quicklime, and the powder enclosed in a water-proof cartridge. The proper proportion of powder being introduced by a funnel and copper tube, (so that none may adhere to the side) a wadding, of hay, moss, or dry turf, is placed upon it, and the remainder of the hole is filled with some packing material. This is usually sand, but by far the best, for safety and efficiency, is dried clay, rolled into balls or cylinders, and dried at a smith's forge, as much as can be, without its falling to pieces. The next best material is the chippings and dust of broken brick, moistened slightly while being rammed. An inch or two of the wadding being simply pressed down upon the powder, the filling material is rammed, or "tamped," with a copper wire, till it becomes very compact. Through it passes, from the powder to the surface, some means of ignition. A straw, filled with priming powder, and ignited by a slow match, was formerly employed for this purpose. But of late years this has been generally, and should be universally, superseded by the *safety-fuse*. This has the appearance of a common tarred rope, and is so prepared that the length of it, which will burn any given time, can be exactly known, so that no premature explosion need be feared.

The proper charge of powder, and the direction of the holes, are very important, both for efficiency and economy. The usual charge is one-third of the depth of the hole; but such a rule is evidently irrational, for the amount of a charge so proportioned will vary with the bore. The proper regulator of the charge is the length of "*the line of least resistance*," i. e. the shortest distance from the bulk of the powder to the outside of the rock. Thus in the figure, AB being the hole bored, and B the powder, BC is the "line of least resistance,"

which should not be in the direction of the hole bored. The proper charge depends on it, and not at all on the depth AB. To produce similar proportional results in different blasts, the charges must be as the *cubes* of the respective lines of least resistance. Thus, if four ounces of powder will just suffice to blast a solid rock in which BC is 2 feet, the charge for another in which BC was 3 feet, would be given by the proportion $2^3 : 4 :: 3^3 : 13\frac{1}{2}$ ounces.

Fig. 76.



On these data the following table is formed.*

Line of least resistance.		Charges of powder.		Line of least resistance.		Charges of powder.	
Feet.	inches.	Lbs.	Oz.	Feet.	Inches.	Lbs.	Oz.
1	0	0	$0\frac{1}{2}$	4		2	0
1	6	0	$1\frac{3}{4}$	4	6	2	$13\frac{1}{2}$
2	0	0	4	5		3	$14\frac{1}{2}$
2	6	0	$7\frac{3}{4}$	6		6	12
3	0	0	$13\frac{1}{2}$	7		10	$11\frac{1}{2}$
3	6	1	$5\frac{1}{2}$	8		16	0

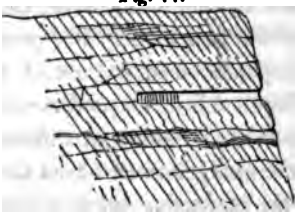
The following table will also be found very convenient.

Diameter of the hole.	Powder in one inch of hole.		Powder in one foot of hole.		Depth of hole to contain one lb. of powder.
Inches.	Lbs.	Oz.	Lbs.	Oz.	Inches.
1	0	0.419	0	5.028	38.197
$1\frac{1}{2}$	0	0.942	0	11.304	16.976
2	0	1.676	1	4.112	9.549
$2\frac{1}{2}$	0	2.618	1	15.416	6.112
3	0	3.770	2	13.240	4.244

* London Mechanics' Magazine, xxxiii. 597, Dec. 1840; and professional papers of Royal Military Engineers, vol. 4.

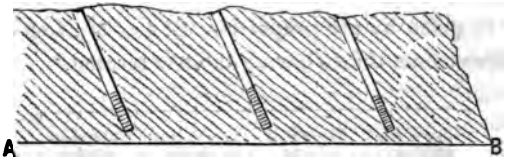
When the rock is stratified, having beds and seams, as in the figure, holes bored parallel to the joints will produce much greater effect than the usual vertical ones.

Fig. 77.



When a rocky surface is to be cut down to a line AB, the holes should be oblique, as

Fig. 78.



in the figure. In some cases, a horizontal one, from B towards A would be advantageous.

On a high face of rock a system of undermining may be usefully employed, by blowing out a mass below, and removing the remaining overhanging portion by crowbars, wedges, &c.

The *crater*, or cavity formed by an explosion, is assumed to be a truncated cone, which has its inner or smaller diameter equal to half the diameter of the mouth of the crater. It has been found by experiment that the outer diameter of the crater may be increased, in ordinary soils, by excessive charges, to three times the length of the "line of least resistance," but not much beyond this; and that within this limit this diameter increases nearly in the ratio of the square root of the charge.

The most unfavorable situation for a charge is where a re-entering angle is to be blown out, as the rock all around it exerts a powerful resisting pressure. The charge needs

to be proportionally increased. This case constantly occurs in blasting out narrow passages.

No loud report should be heard, nor stones be thrown out. The best effect is produced when the report is trifling, but when the mass is lifted, and thoroughly fractured, without the projection of fragments. If the rock be only shaken by a blast, and not moved outwardly, a second charge in the same hole will be very effective.

Any kind of compact brush, such as pine or cedar boughs, laid on rocks about to be blasted, will almost completely prevent the flying of fragments, and thus lessen the danger to persons and buildings in the vicinity.

The safety of blasting operations may be greatly increased by applying galvanism to the ignition of the powder, which can then be effected at any distance. By its aid a row of blasts can be exploded simultaneously, by which their effective power is greatly increased. In this way, a single blast, of nine tons of powder, contained in three cells, removed one million tons of rock from a cliff at Dover, with a saving of $50,000.

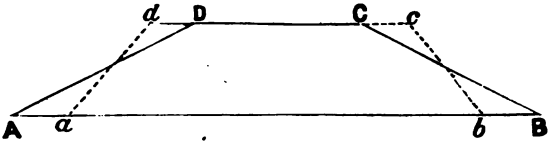
EMBANKMENTS.

Perfect solidity is the great desideratum in artificial road-making. Every precaution must therefore be employed, in forming a high bank, to lessen its tendency to slip. From the space which the bank is to occupy, all vegetable or perishable matter, and all porous earth and loose stones, should be removed. On this space the earth is then deposited, to form the embankment, which is usually made of full height at its commencement, and is extended by "tipping" earth from the extremity, and so carried out on a level with the top surface. But an embankment thus formed will be deficient in compact-

ness; for the particles of earth, which are emptied from the top of the bank, will temporarily stop in their descent at the point of the slope at which the friction becomes sufficient to balance their gravity; and when more earth comes upon them, they will give way and slide lower down, causing the portions above them to slip and crack, and thus delaying for a long time the complete consolidation.

This method is, however, cheap and rapid. Its rapidity will be increased by obtaining more "tipping places," which can be effected by forming the bank at first wider

Fig. 79.



at top, and narrower at bottom, than it is finally to be, (i. e. forming *abcd* instead of ABCD) and subsequently throwing down the superfluous earth from the top to give the proper width at bottom.*

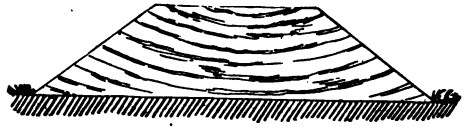
The solidity of embankments, which are made by tipping from the ends may be increased by forming the outside portions of the bank first, and gradually filling up towards the middle, so that the earth may arrange itself with a tendency to move towards the centre, if at all.†

To ensure the stability of embankments, they should, however, be formed by depositing the earth in successive layers or courses, not more than three or four feet thick; and the vehicles, conveying the materials, should be re-

* Laws of Excavation and Embankment on Railways, p. 59.
† Mahan, p. 287.

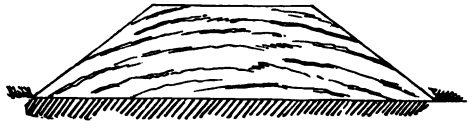
quired to pass over the bank at each trip, so as to compress the earth. If the case warranted the expense, each course might with advantage be well rammed. To lessen the danger of slips, the layers should be made some-

Fig. 80.



what concave, as in Fig. 80. If made convex, as in the next figure, and as they are apt to become, in the most

Fig. 81.



natural mode of forming them, portions would tend to slip off in the direction of the layers, while the arrangement of concave layers would resist, instead of assisting, any slip. A framework of timber has sometimes been inserted in a bank to bind it more firmly together.

An embankment should always be formed at first of its full width, and not, from a mistaken economy, be at first made narrow, to be subsequently increased by lateral additions; for the new portion will never unite perfectly with the old.

At the foot, or "toe," of the bank, a slight excavation may be made to resist its tendency to spread, or a low but massive stone wall may be there erected.

The slopes, like those of excavations, should be grassed, or sodded. If exposed to the action of water, a row of planks, grooved and tongued, and sharpened at bottom,

should be driven at their foot, forming a "*sheet-piling*;" and the slopes themselves should be protected with a "*slope-wall*," composed of rough stones, from one to two feet thick, laid without mortar, with their faces at right angles to the slope, and "breaking joints" as perfectly as possible. To prevent their being thrown out of place by the swelling and heaving, which is caused by the freezing of the rain-water retained by the clayey material of which an embankment may be composed, a layer, one or two feet thick, of coarse gravel, should be placed on the slope before laying the stone facing, so that the rain-water can at once pass through this porous coating. At the foot of the slope, an "apron," or mass of loose stones may be deposited.

SWAMPS AND BOGS.

When an embankment is to be made through a swamp, bog, marsh, or morass, many precautions are necessary.

If the bog be less than four feet deep, and have a solid bottom, all the soft matter should be removed, and an embankment raised upon the hard bottom.

If it be deeper, but not very soft, the surface may be covered with two rows of swarded turf; the lower being laid with its grassy face downward, the other with that face upward, and the embankment raised upon them.

When the swamp is deep and fluid, thorough draining is the first and most important point. On each side of the road, wide and deep ditches must be cut, to collect the surface water, and to carry it off into the natural water-courses. Numerous smaller ditches must be cut, at short intervals, across the road-way, from one main drain to the other, descending both ways from the centre. This operation will consolidate the surface between the main

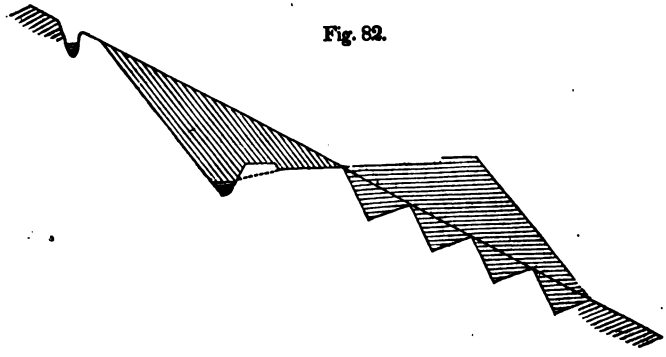
ditches. The cross-drains may be filled with broken stones, (or bushes, if they will always remain under water, as otherwise they will decay, and cause the road to sink) and on this foundation the embankment may be raised.

In extreme cases, the lower portions of the embankment must be formed of brush-wood, arranged in *fascines*, which are a specific remedy against water. They are formed by carefully selecting the long, straight, and slender branches of underwood, and tying them up in bundles, from 9 to 12 inches in diameter, and from 10 to 20 feet long. A layer of these fascines is laid across the road; a second layer in the direction of the road; and so on, to as great a thickness as may be required to raise the road-bed perfectly high and dry. Sharp stakes are driven at intervals to fasten together the layers. Poles, or young trees, may be laid across every other course. Upon this platform of fascines may be laid large flat stones, and upon them a course of earth and gravel.

SIDE-HILL ROADS.

When a road runs along the side of a hill, it will be most cheaply formed, by making it half in excavation and half in embankment. But as the embankment would be

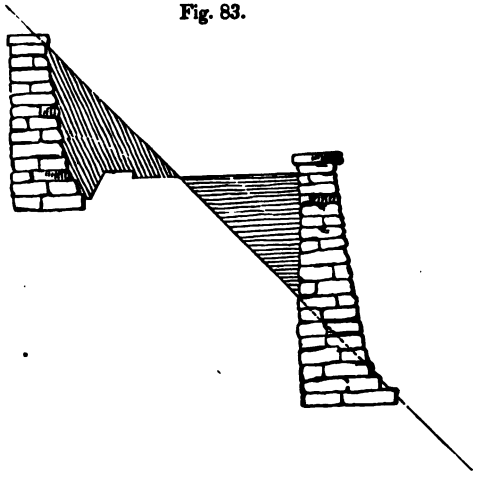
Fig. 82.



liable to slip, if simply deposited on the natural surface of the ground, the latter should be notched into steps, or offsets, in order to retain the earth. In adjusting the height of the made ground, an allowance should be made for its subsequent settling.

If the surface be very much inclined, both the cuttings and fillings will need to be supported by "retaining walls,"

Fig. 83.



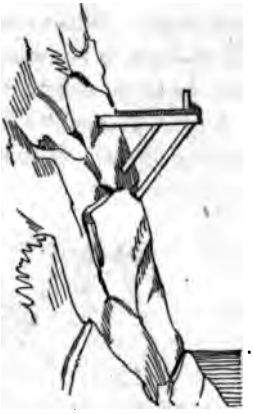
which may be laid dry if composed of large stones, or in mortar. The proper thickness which should be given to them, will be investigated under the head of "Mechanical structures."

If the side hill be of rock, the steep slope at which that material may safely be cut, will enable the upper wall to be dispensed with.

When the road is required to pass along the face of a nearly perpendicular precipice, at a considerable height, (a case which sometimes occurs in passing a projecting point of the rocky bank of a river in a mountainous dis-

trict) it may rest on a frame-work formed of horizontal beams, deeply let into the face of the precipice, and supported at their outer ends by oblique timbers, the lower ends of which rest in notches formed in the rock.

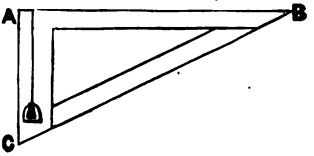
Fig. 84.



TRIMMING AND SHAPING.

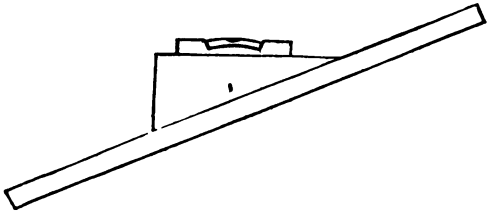
To form the side-slopes with precision, to the proper inclination, a simple bevel, "*bâtir*-level," or "clinometer," may be employed with great advantage. It consists of two strips of board, AB, AC, fastened to each other at right angles, and connected by a third one, CB. When the desired slope is 2 to 1, make AB twice the length of AC. Place C, or B, at any known point of the slope; make AC vertical by the plumb-line; and then will BC coincide with the slope desired.

Fig. 85.



Another implement for the same purpose is formed of a simple strip of wood, to which is attached a triangle,

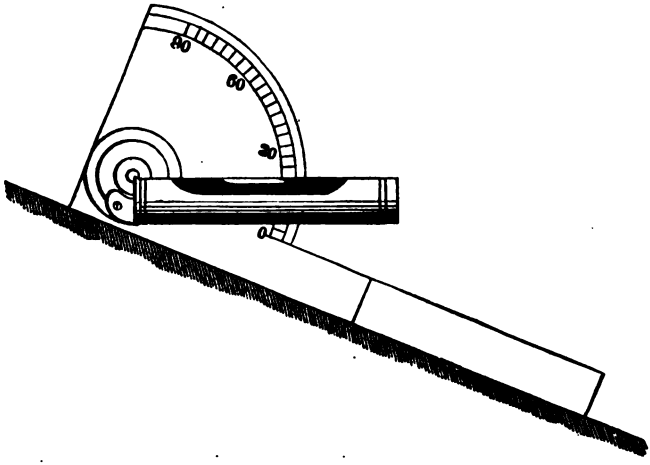
Fig. 86.



with base and height corresponding to those of the desired slope. When a spirit-level, resting upon the top of this triangle, is horizontal, the inclined strip will coincide with the slope sought.

A more general "Clinometer" is shown in the accompanying figure. It consists of a spirit-level, moveable on

Fig. 87.

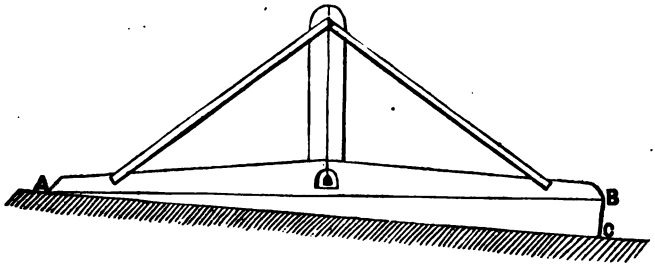


a pivot, which is the centre of a quadrant divided into degrees. To measure a slope, place the bar upon it, and turn the level till the bubble is in its centre. The reading at the top of the level will indicate the inclination of the slope. To increase its portability, the long bar doubles up on a hinge in its middle.*

To shape the tops of the embankments, and the bottoms of the cuttings, in accordance with the desired profile of the road, attach, to the under side of a common

* Simms on Levelling, p. 96.

Fig. 88.



mason's level, a triangle ABC, with its base and height so proportioned as to correspond to the "crowning" of the road; 1 in 24 for example. Or, instead of the triangle, gauges of different lengths, moveable on thumb-screws, may be made to project below the level, to proper depths.*

2. MECHANICAL STRUCTURES.

Under this head are included the bridges, culverts, and other works of the mason and carpenter, which are required for the purposes of the road.

BRIDGES.

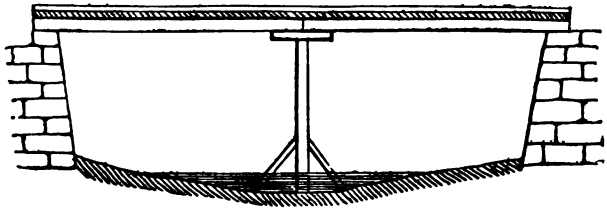
The most simple and natural form of a bridge consists of two timbers, laid across the stream, or opening, which is to be passed over, and covered with plank to form the road-way. Walls should be built to support each end of the timbers, and are named the *abutments*. The width of the opening which they cross is termed the *stretch*, or *bay*. The timbers themselves are the *string-pieces*. Their number and size must of course increase with the stretch. For a stretch of 16 feet, they should be about

* Parnell, p. 261.

15 inches deep by 8 broad, and be placed at intervals of about 2 feet.* The greatest weight which can come upon them is when the surface of the bridge is covered with men standing side by side, and is then equal to 120 lbs. per square foot of surface, independently of the weight of the materials.

This simple construction is only applicable to short stretches. For spaces of greater width, supports from the bottom of the opening may be placed at proper intervals. They may be piers of masonry, or upright props or shores of timber, properly braced, and supported on piles, if the foundation be insecure. They will divide the long

Fig. 89.



stretch into a number of shorter ones, and support the ends of the timbers by which each of them is spanned.

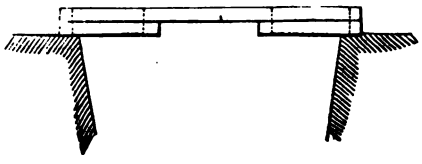
But if the opening be deep, or occupied by a rapid stream, it is very desirable to avoid the use of any such obstructions. Means must therefore be devised for strengthening the beams, so as to enable them to span larger openings. This may be effected by supports from below, or from above.

Of *supports from below*, the simplest are shorter timbers, (*bolsters*, or *corbels*) placed under the main ones,

* Tredgold's Carpentry, p. 148.

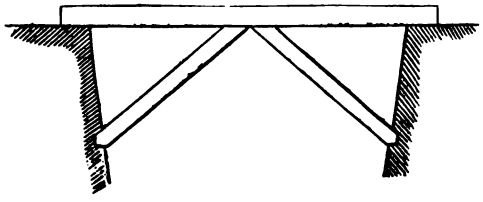
to which they are firmly bolted, and projecting about one-third of the stretch. This will considerably increase the stiffness.

Fig. 90.



Still more effective are oblique braces, or "struts," supporting the middle of the beam, and resting, at their

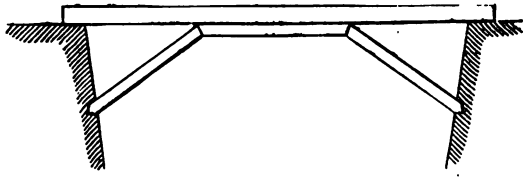
Fig. 91.



lower ends, in "shoulders," cut into the abutments. Similar braces may be applied to the "bolsters" of Fig. 90.

As the span increased, these braces would become so

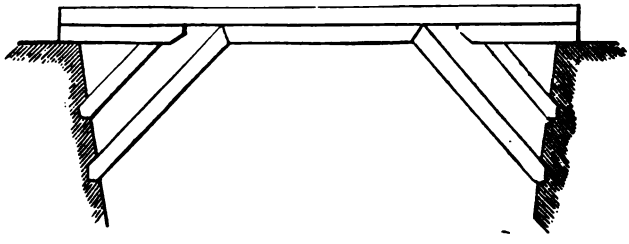
Fig. 92.



oblique as to lose much of their efficiency. A *straining-piece* is therefore interposed between them. Thirty-five feet may thus be spanned.

For longer stretches, the bolsters, braces, and straining-beams may be combined, as in Fig. 93. The principle of this method may be extended to very wide openings.

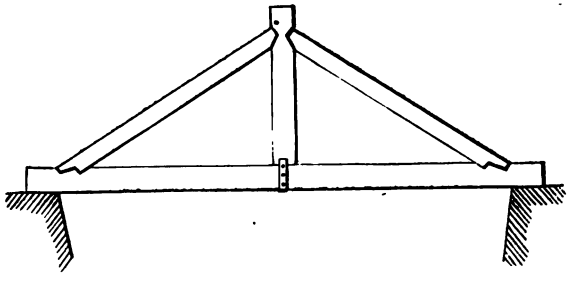
Fig. 93.



But in many cases supports from below may be objectionable, as exerting too much thrust against the abutments, and being liable to be carried away by freshets, &c. The beams must in such cases be strengthened by *supports from above*

The simplest form of such is shown in Fig. 94, in which the horizontal beam is supported by an upright

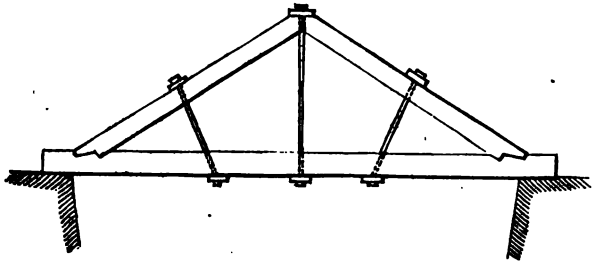
Fig. 94.



"king-post," to which it is attached by an iron strap, as in the figure, or by the upright "king-post" being formed of two pieces, bolted together, and enclosing the beam between them. The king-post itself is supported by the oblique braces, or "struts," which rest against notches in the horizontal beam.

Since the king-post acts as a suspending tie, an iron

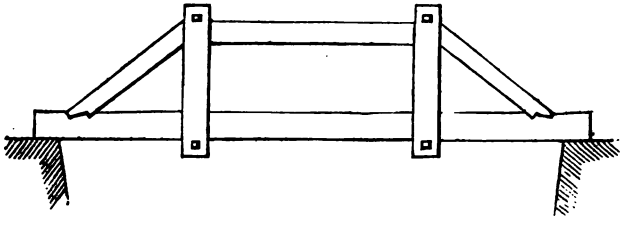
Fig. 95.



rod may be advantageously substituted for it. The oblique braces may be also stiffened by iron ties, binding them to the main timbers, as in Fig. 95.

For longer stretches, a straining beam may be intro-

Fig. 96.



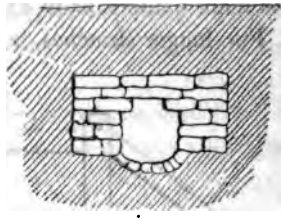
duced between the struts, as in Fig. 96, in which the posts are represented as enclosing the beam.

For bridges of greater span, and more complicated structure, the professional assistance of a civil engineer should be secured. The subject is therefore not carried any farther in this volume. For the same reason, bridges of stone and iron are omitted. A comprehensive analysis of them may be found in Professor Mahan's "Civil Engineering," and a minute development in Hann and Hosking's "Theory, Practice, and Architecture of Bridges."

CULVERTS AND DRAINS.

These structures are necessary for carrying under a road the streams which it intersects. They are also needed to carry the waters of the ditches, from the upper side of a road, to that side on which lie the natural watercourses into which they must finally be discharged. Their simplest form consists of two walls of stone or brick, covered with slabs, and having a foundation, either of wood (if always wet) or of stone, laid in the form of an inverted arch, as shown in cross-section in Figure 97. Their size must be proportioned to the greatest quantity of water which they can ever be required to pass, and should be at least 18 inches square, or large enough to admit a boy to enter to clean them out. Their bottoms should be inclined 1 in 120, or 1 inch in 10 feet. When the road slopes, the inclination of the culvert may be increased, if necessary, by making it cross the road obliquely. At each end flat stones should be sunk vertically, or sheet-piling driven, to guard against the undermining effects of the water. The length of a culvert under an embankment will be equal to the width of the road, increased by the distance on each side, to which the slopes run out, at the depth at which the culvert is placed. At each end of it should be built wing-walls, their tops having an outward and downward slope corresponding to that of the embankment. Their ground plan may be rectangular, trapezoidal, or curved.

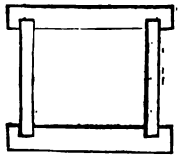
Fig. 97.



In districts where stone is scarce, a small culvert may

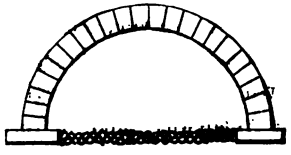
be constructed with four ranges of slabs; grooves being cut in the top and bottom slabs, to receive the upright ones which form the sides.

Fig. 98.



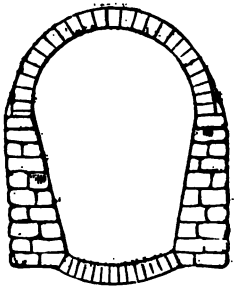
A cheap culvert may be built of brick, with a semicircular arch, of three feet span, and 4 inches thick. One thousand bricks will build 26 running feet. If the flow of water be small, the bottom may be merely covered with gravel, over which is then poured grout of hydraulic cement, forming a superficial concrete.

Fig. 99.



To obtain greater strength, the arch may rest on abutments, sloping inward, and the bottom of the culvert be a flat inverted arch.

Fig. 100.



When a road is in excavation, the ditches on either side of it will sometimes require to be covered, to prevent their being filled up by washings from the sides. They may then be formed as in Fig. 97; but spaces of half an inch in width should be left between the covering stones. A layer of brushwood should be placed over these, and the remainder of the ditch filled up to the surface with broken stones, through which the water can filter.*

Similar but smaller drains may be formed at intervals under the road, diverging from its centre like the two

* Parnell, p. 95.

branches of the letter V, and descending from the angular point to the side-ditches. They are called "mitre drains." In very wet ground, a deep but narrow drain, filled with broken stones, may be carried through the middle of the road.

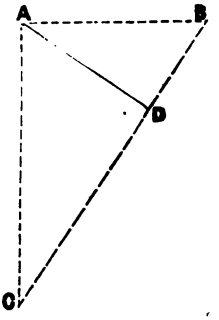
CATCHWATERS, OR WATER-TABLES.

These are very shallow paved ditches, formed across the road upon a slope, to catch the water which runs down its length, (and which would otherwise furrow up the road-way) and to turn it off into the side-ditches. They are also necessary in the hollows which exist at the points where a descent and ascent meet. They should be so laid that a carriage will not feel any shock in passing over them. Their bottom may be flat, and six feet wide, and for twelve feet on each side they may rise one inch to the foot. The side-slope, down which they discharge their waters, should be also paved. Sometimes for economy they are used as a substitute for a culvert to carry the waters of a small stream across the road; but this is very objectionable, particularly from the ledges of ice which will be there formed in winter. They are sometimes shaped like a V, with the point directed up the ascent, and will then divide the waters. In mountainous situations they should be located obliquely to the axis of the road, and the most advantageous position will evidently be that which has the greatest descent with the least length, and may be geometrically determined.

Let the longitudinal slope of the road descending from A to B, be m to 1; and let its transverse slope from A to C be n to 1; the former being here supposed steeper than the latter. It is required to determine the position of the catchwater AD, so that it may have the greatest slope possible.

If a line, BC, be so drawn on the surface of the road as to be horizontal, the desired line of greatest slope, AD, will be perpendicular to it, as explained on page 75. The position of this horizontal line must therefore be first determined. The two points, A and B, which it unites, being on the same level, the descent from A to B equals that from A to C. These descents are expressed respectively by $\frac{AB}{m}$ and $\frac{AC}{n}$, giving the equation, $\frac{AB}{m} = \frac{AC}{n}$; whence $AC = AB \cdot \frac{n}{m}$.

Fig. 101.



Therefore, to obtain the position AD by a graphical construction, make AB of any length, and set off AC (as given by the equation) at right angles to it; join CB, and from A draw the perpendicular AD, which will be the line required.

If it be required to define the position AD, by the angle BAD, it will be seen that BAD = ACB; and that

$$\text{sin. ACB} = \frac{AB}{CB} = \frac{AB}{\sqrt{(AB^2 + AC^2)}} = \frac{AB}{\sqrt{\left(AB^2 + AB^2 \cdot \frac{n^2}{m^2}\right)}}$$

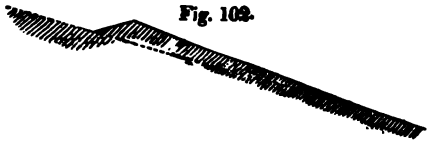
$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{\left(1 + \frac{n^2}{m^2}\right)}}.$$

If $m = 20$ and $n = 30$, sin. ACB = .5555, and ACB = 33° 45′.

Care must be taken to avoid placing the catchwater in the direction of the diagonal of the rectangle formed by the four wheels of a carriage; in order to avoid the double shock which would otherwise be caused by two wheels sinking into it at once.

A cheap substitute for a catchwater on a steep slope is a mound of earth, crossing the road obliquely. This will

Fig. 102.



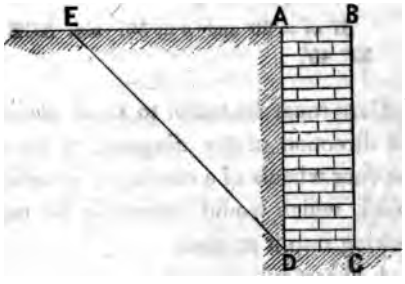
also serve as a resting-place on the ascent. It should be so proportioned, that carriages may pass it without inconvenience.

RETAINING WALLS.

Retaining, sustaining, revetment, and breast walls, as their various names import, are employed to support masses of earth, and to resist their lateral pressure. Their use, when a road passes along a steep hill-side, has been already explained. In passing through villages also, where land is valuable, a narrower space will suffice for a road in excavation or embankment, if retaining walls be substituted for side-slopes.

The calculation of the necessary thickness for retaining walls, to enable them to resist the thrust of the earth which they are intended to support, is a problem of considerable intricacy of investigation, as well as one of much uncertainty, in consequence of the numerous and greatly varied data required.

Fig. 103.



When a wall, of which ABCD is a transverse *section*, supports a mass of earth, there is a certain triangular portion, ADE, of the earth, which would slide downward if the wall were removed, and which therefore now presses against

the wall with a force, varying with its height, its specific gravity, and the angle, ADE, at which the earth would stand if unsupported. The wall may yield to its pressure by sliding along its base, or along some horizontal course, or by being overturned and revolving about the exterior edge of one of its horizontal joints. The latter is the only danger to be feared in a well-built wall.

The most complete investigation of the problem of the proper thickness of retaining walls has been made by M. Poncelet in a Memoir,* of which a translation has appeared in the Journal of the Franklin Institute for 1843. It contains valuable tables as well as *formulæ*. Let a denote the angle with the vertical made by the line of the natural slope of the earth, and represented by ADE in the figure. It will vary from 70°, as in the case of very fine dry sand, to 35°, as in the case of heavy clayey earth. Let w denote the weight of any unit of the earth, and w' that of the same unit of the masonry. The specific gravity of the former ranges between 1.4 and 1.9, and that of the latter between 1.7 and 2.5.† The ratio $\frac{w}{w'}$ is therefore usually between $\frac{2}{3}$ and 1. For the simplest case, that in which the embankment does not rise above the wall, the formula‡ for the thickness corresponding to any height H, is

$$\text{Tan. } \tfrac{1}{2}\, a \times .8 \sqrt{\frac{w}{w'}} \cdot \text{H.}$$

This gives a stability of 1.92 to 1, or nearly double that of a strict equilibrium.

For the usual assumed mean values of $a = 45°$, and $\frac{w}{w'} = \frac{2}{3}$, the formula gives for the required thickness of the wall $\frac{27}{100}$, or a little over a quarter of the height.

* *No.* 13 *du Memorial de l'officier du Génie.* See also PRONY; *Récherches sur la Pousée des Terres;* and NAVIER; *Leçons sur l'Applition de la Mécanique aux Constructions.*

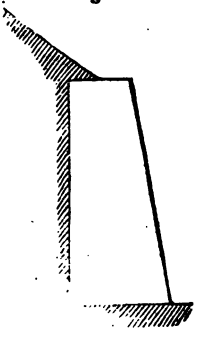
† Navier. ‡ Poncelet, § 12.

The extreme limits in any case are from $\frac{1}{5}\frac{9}{6}\frac{8}{6}$, or one-fifth of the height, with compact earth and heavy masonry, to $\frac{4}{6}\frac{5}{6}\frac{2}{6}$, or not quite half the height, with loose earth and light masonry.* The precise thickness can be calculated by the preceding formula; after noting the slope at which the earth naturally stands, and weighing a certain portion of the masonry, and of the earth previously thoroughly moistened.

When there is an embankment rising above the top of the wall, the proper thickness (in cases in which the height of the superincumbent load does not much exceed the height of the wall) may be approximately obtained by substituting in the same *formula*, instead of the height of the wall, the sum of the heights of the wall and of the earth above it.†

Thus far both faces of the retaining wall have been supposed to be vertical. But the same strength with a less amount of material may be obtained by various modifications of its section.

Fig. 104.



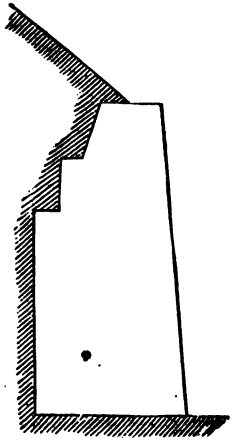
The face of the wall may be advantageously made to slope with a "*bâtir*," varying from $\frac{1}{24}$, or $\frac{1}{2}$ inch horizontal to 1 foot vertical, to $\frac{1}{6}$, or 2 inches to 1 foot.

To find the mean thickness of such a wall, which shall have the same stability as another wall with vertical faces, and of the thickness obtained by the preceding rules, subtract from this given thickness four-tenths of the entire projection of the *bâtir*.‡ Thus, if the given thickness be 4 feet, and the height 24 feet, and the corresponding mean thickness of a wall with

* Poncelet, § 34. † Ibid. § 22. ‡ Ibid. § 72.

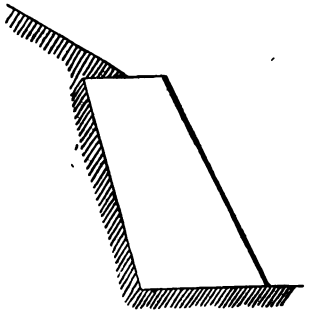
a *bâtir* of $\frac{1}{12}$ be desired, it will be $4 . - \frac{4}{10} \times \frac{24}{12} = 4 . - .8 = 3.2$. The *bâtir* is supposed not to exceed one-fifth of the height. From the *mean* thickness, those of the top and bottom are readily deduced, knowing the height and *bâtir*.

Fig. 105.



The desired increase of thickness towards the bottom of a wall is often given by offsets at its back. Considerable resistance to the overturning of the wall is offered by the weight of the earth which rests upon these offsets.

Fig. 106.

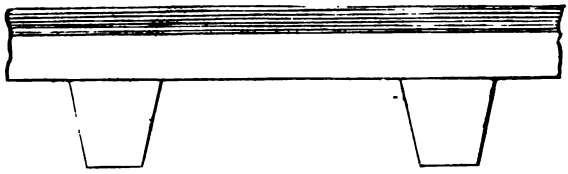


Still more economical of masonry is a leaning retaining wall, in which the back has a *bâtir*, which may advantageously be 1 in 6. In this case strength requires that the perpendicular let fall from the centre of gravity of the section upon the base, should fall so far within the inner edge of the base, that the stone of the bottom course of the foundation may present sufficient surface to bear the pressure upon it.*

* Mahan, p. 142.

The strength of a wall may be still farther increased by lessening its thickness, and employing the difference of the amount of masonry in buttresses or counter-forts, attached to its back at regular intervals, and firmly banded

Fig. 107.



with it. The trapezoidal section for them is preferred, as giving a broader base of union. Fig. 107 is a ground plan of such an arrangement.

To lessen the pressure of an embankment, that portion of it next the wall should be formed in compact layers, inclining downward from the wall. Through the wall should be left holes (*barbacanes*) six inches high and three wide, disposed, in the *quincunx* form, at distances of six feet horizontally, and four feet vertically, in order to give vent to the water which may filtrate through the bank.

The masonry of a wall which has to sustain great pressures, requires much attention. The following is part of the specification for such walls of rubble masonry on the public works of the state of New York. "The stone shall be sound, well-shaped, and durable, and of not less than 6 inches in thickness, and three feet area of bed. The smoothest and broadest bed shall in all cases be laid down, and if it be rough and uneven, all projecting points shall be hammered off; and the same from the top bed, so as to give the succeeding stone a firm bearing. In all cases the bed shall be properly prepared, by levelling up, before the next stone is laid, but

no levellers shall be placed under a stone by raising it from its bed. One-fourth of the wall shall be composed of *headers*, which shall extend *through* the wall, where it is not more than two feet thick, and from 2 to 4 feet back for thicker walls. The whole shall be laid in hydraulic mortar, composed of the best quality of cement, and clean sharp sand; and particular care shall be taken to have each stone surrounded with mortar, and thoroughly bedded in it."

CHAPTER IV.

IMPROVEMENT OF THE SURFACE.

"Next to the general influence of the seasons, there is perhaps no circumstance more interesting to men in a civilized state, than the *perfection* of the means of interior communication."

Committee of House of Commons, 1819.

THE surface of a newly-made road is generally very deficient in the important qualities of hardness and smoothness, and to secure these attributes in their highest attainable degree, it is necessary to cover the earth, which forms the natural surface of the road, with some other material, such as stone, wood, &c. The benefits of such a process are twofold, consisting,

1. In substituting a hard and smooth surface for the soft and uneven earth;

2. In protecting the ground beneath it from the action of the rain-water, which, by penetrating to it, and remaining upon it, would not only impede the progress of vehicles, but render the road too weak to bear their weight.

Such a covering should be regarded, not as an arch to bear the weight of the vehicles, but simply as a roof, to protect the earth beneath it from the weather; not as a substitute for the soil under it, but only as a protection to that soil to enable it to retain its natural strength. Erroneous views on this point have caused very prejudicial practices, particularly in the case of broken stone, or McAdam-roads.

The various surfaces will be considered in the following order; beginning with the most imperfect, that of the unimproved earth, and ending with the most perfect yet attained—that of Railroads.

1. EARTH ROADS.
2. GRAVEL ROADS.
3. BROKEN STONE, OR McADAM ROADS.
4. PAVED ROADS.
5. ROADS OF WOOD.
6. ROADS OF OTHER MATERIALS.
7. ROADS WITH TRACKWAYS.

1. EARTH ROADS.

Roads of earth, with the surfaces of the excavations and embankment unimproved by art, are very deficient at all times in the important requisites of smoothness and hardness, and in the spring are almost impassable. But with all their faults, they are almost the only roads in this country, (the scantiness of labor and capital as yet preventing the adoption of better ones) and therefore no pains should be spared to render them as good as their nature will permit.

The faults of surface being so great, it is especially necessary to lessen all other defects, and to make the road in all other respects as nearly as possible "what it ought to be." Its grades should therefore be made, if possible, as easy as 1 in 30,* by winding around the hills, or by cutting them down and filling up the valleys. Its shape should be properly formed with a slope of 1 in 20† each

* See page 41. † Page 51.

way from the centre. Its drainage should be made very thorough, by deep and capacious ditches, sloping not less than 1 in 125,* in accordance with the minimum road slope. Drainage alone will often change a bad road to a good one, and without it no permanent improvement can be effected. Trees should be removed from the borders of the road, as intercepting the sun and wind from its surface.

If the soil be a loose sand, a coating of six inches of clay carted upon it, will be the most effective and the cheapest way of improving it, if the clay can be obtained within a moderate distance. Only one-half the width need be covered with the clay, thus forming a road for the summer travel, leaving the other sandy portion untouched, to serve for the travel in the rainy season.

If the soil be an adhesive clay, the application of sand in a similar manner will produce equally beneficial results. On a steep hill these improvements will be particularly valuable.

When the road is worn down into hollows, and requires a supply of new material, its selection should be made with great care, so that it may be as gravelly as possible, and entirely free from vegetable earth, muck, or mould. No sod or turf should ever be allowed to come upon the road, to fill a hole or rut, or in any other way; for, though at first deceptively tough, they soon decay, and form the softest mud. Nor should the roadmaker run into the other extreme, and fill up the ruts and holes with stones, which will not wear uniformly with the rest of the road, but will produce hard bumps and ridges. The plough and the scraper should never be used in *repairing* a road. Their work is large in quantity, but very bad in quality. The

* See page 54.

plough breaks up the compact surface, which time and travel had made tolerable; and the scraper drags upon the road from the side ditches the soft and alluvial matter which the rains had removed, but which this implement obstinately returns to the road.

A very good substitute for the scraper, in levelling the surface of the road, clearing it of stones, and filling up the ruts, consists of a stick of timber, shod with iron, and attached to its tongue or neap obliquely, so that it is drawn over the road "quartering," and throws all obstructions to one side. The stick may be six feet long, a foot wide, and six inches thick, and have secured to its front side a bar of iron descending half an inch below the wood.

Every hole or rut in a road should be at once filled up with good materials, for the wheels fall into them like hammers, deepening them at each stroke, and thus increasing the destructive effect of the next wheel.

EFFECT OF WHEELS ON THE SURFACE.

The effects of broad and narrow wheels upon roads have been much discussed, and many laws enacted to encourage the use of the former. Upon a hard and well-made road, (such as one of broken stone) there is little difference between them, but on a common earth road, narrow wheels, supporting heavy weights, exercise a very destructive cutting and ploughing action. This diminishes as the width of the felloe increases, which it may do to such an extent, that the wheel acts as a roller in improving, instead of injuring, the surface. For these reasons the New York turnpike law enacts that carriages, having wheels of which the tire or track is six inches wide, shall pay only half the usual tolls; those with wheels nine inches wide, only one-fourth; and that those

with twelve inches shall pay none at all. The proportions agree precisely with those deduced from observation by an experienced English roadmaker.* The felloe should have a flat bearing surface and not a rounded one. The benefits of broad wheels are sometimes destroyed by overloading them. To prevent this, when tolls are collected, they should be increased, for each additional horse, more rapidly than the direct proportion; thus, if one horse paid 5 cents, two should pay 11, three 17, &c. Narrow wheels are particularly injurious when in rapid motion, for having less resistance and greater velocity than others, they revolve less perfectly, and *drag* more, thus producing the worst sort of effect. Conical wheels, of which the inner is greater than the outer circumference, tend to move in a curve, and being forced to proceed in a right line, exert a peculiarly destructive grinding action on the road. On McAdam roads, horses' feet exercise a more destructive effect than the wheels of vehicles. It has been calculated† that a set of tires would run 2700 miles in average weather, but that a set of horses' shoes would bear only 200 miles of travel.‡

* Penfold, p. 22. † Gordon on Locomotion.

‡ The imperfect surface of an earth road makes it doubly important to take every precaution to lessen the friction of vehicles upon it. The resistance decreases as the *breadth of the tire* increases, on compressible roads, as earth, sand, gravel, &c.; while on paved and broken-stone roads, the resistance is nearly independent of the breadth of the tire.* *Cylindrical* wheels also cause less friction than conical ones. The *larger* the wheels the less friction have they, and the greater power of leverage in overcoming obstacles. The fore-wheels should be as large as the hind ones, were it not for convenience of turning. *The axles should be straight,* and not bent downward at the end, which increases the friction, though it has the advantage of throwing the mud away from the carriage. The *load* should be placed *on the hind wheels* rather than on the fore ones,

* Morin, p. 339.

2. GRAVEL ROADS.*

The roundness of the pebbles, which form the chief part of gravel, whether from rivers or pits, prevents them from perfectly consolidating, except under much travel; but still a gravel road, properly made, is far superior to one of common earth. Gravel from the shores of rivers is too clean for this object, and does not contain enough earthy matter to unite and bind together its pebbles, which are too perfectly water-worn, and freed from asperities. On the other hand, gravel dug from the earth contains too much earth, which must be sifted from it before use. Two sieves should be provided, through which the gravel is to be thrown. One should have wires, an inch and a half or two inches apart, so that all pebbles above that size may be rejected. The other should have spaces of three quarters of an inch, and the material which passes through it should be thrown away, or employed for foot-paths. The expense of sifting will be more than repaid by the superior condition of the road formed by the purified material, and the diminution of labor in keeping it in order.

The road-bed should be well shaped and drained. If it is rock, all projecting points should be broken off, and a layer of earth, a foot thick, should be interposed, or the gravel will wear away much more rapidly, and consolidate much more slowly.

Long and pliant *springs* greatly lessen the shock of passing over obstacles, and their advantage has been stated to be equal to one horse in four. The *line of draught should ascend* at an angle of 15 degrees, so that when the horse leans forward in pulling, his force will be exerted nearly horizontally.

* Parnell, p. 170. Penfold, p. 13. Amer. Railroad Journal, vol. ii. p. 4.

A coating of *four inches* of gravel should be spread over the road-bed, and vehicles allowed to pass over it till it becomes tolerably firm, and is nearly, but not entirely, consolidated; men being stationed to continually rake in the ruts, as fast as they appear. A second coating of 3 or 4 inches should then be added and treated like the first; and finally a third coating. A very heavy roller drawn over the road will hasten its consolidation. Wet weather is the most favorable time for adding new materials.

A very erroneous practice is that of putting the larger gravel at the bottom, and the smaller at the surface; for, from the effects of the frost, and of the vibration of carriages, the larger stones will rise to the surface and the smaller ones descend, like the materials in a shaken sieve, and the road will never become firm and smooth.

3. BROKEN-STONE ROADS.

Broken-stone roads have been the subjects of violent partisanship on many disputed points, and the most important of these questions relates to the propriety or necessity of a paved foundation beneath the coating of broken stones. McAdam warmly denies the advantages of this, while Telford supports and practises it. Broken-stone roads may therefore be conveniently divided into *McAdam roads* and *Telford roads*.

McADAM ROADS.

Mr. McAdam, who first brought into general use in England roads of broken stone, and from whom they derive their popular name, is said* to have deduced the

* Millington, p. 234.

leading principles of his improved system from his observation of the passage of a heavy vehicle, such as a loaded stage-coach, over a newly-formed gravel road. The wheels sink in to a considerable depth, and plough up the road, in consequence of the roundness of the pebbles, which renders them easily displaced. Hence ensues great friction against the wheels; which, moreover, are always in hollows with little hills of pebbles in front of them, which they must roll over or push aside. The evil continues, until at last, after long-repeated passages of heavy vehicles, the pebbles have become broken into angular fragments, which finally form a compact mass.

But since this is so desirable a consummation, the task of breaking the stones ought not to be imposed on the carriages, but should be performed in advance by manual labor, by which it will be executed far more speedily, effectually, and completely.

Hence is deduced the leading principle of the system, viz.: that *the stones should be all broken by hand into angular fragments* before being placed on the road, and that no rounded stones should ever be introduced.

In the next place, whenever a carriage-wheel, or horse's hoof, falls eccentrically on a large stone, it is loosened from its place, and disturbs the smaller ones for a considerable distance around it, thus preventing their consolidation. Therefore *no large stones should be ever employed.*

Small angular stones are the cardinal requisites. When of suitable materials of proper size, and applied in accordance with the directions which will be presently given, they will unite and consolidate into one mass, almost as solid as the original stone, with a smooth, hard, and unelastic surface.

We will examine successively the proper quality of stone to be used; the size to which they should be broken; the manner of breaking them; the thickness of the coating; the best method of applying the stone; of rolling the road; of keeping it in order; and of repairing it when in bad condition.

THE QUALITY OF THE STONE.

The materials employed for a broken-stone road (often called the "Road metal") should be at the same time *hard* and *tough*. "*Hardness* is that disposition of a solid which renders it difficult to displace its parts among themselves; thus, steel is harder than iron, and diamond almost infinitely harder than any other substance in nature. The *toughness* of a solid, or that quality by which it will endure heavy blows without breaking, is again distinct from hardness, though often confounded with it. It consists in a certain yielding of parts with a powerful general cohesion, and is compatible with various degrees of elasticity."*

Some geological knowledge is required to make a proper selection of the materials. The most useful are those which are the most difficult to break up. Such are the *basaltic* and *trap* rocks, particularly those in which the *hornblende* predominates. The *greenstones* are very variable in quality.† *Flint* or *quartz* rocks, and all pure *silicious* materials, are improper for use, since, though hard, they are brittle, and deficient in toughness. *Granite* is generally bad, being composed of three heterogeneous

* Sir John Herschel. "Discourse on the study of Natural Philosophy."

† The greenstone of Bergen and Newark mountain (near New York) is good; that of the eastern face of the Palisades above Weehawken is too liable to decomposition. (Renwick, Pract. Mechanics, p. 145.)

materials, quartz, felspar, and mica, the first of which is brittle, the second liable to decomposition, and the third laminated. The *sienitic* granites, however, which contain hornblende in the place of felspar, are good, and better in proportion to their darkness of color. *Gneiss* is still inferior to granite, and *mica-slate* wholly inadmissible. The *argillaceous slates* make a smooth road, but one which decays very rapidly when wet. The *sandstones* are too soft. The *limestones* of the carboniferous and transition formations are very good; but other limestones, though they will make a smooth road very quickly, having a peculiar readiness in "binding," are too weak for heavy loads, and wear out very rapidly. In wet weather they are also liable to be slippery. It is generally better economy to bring good materials from a distance than to employ inferior ones obtained close at hand. Excellent materials may be found throughout the primary districts of the United States. In the tide-water regions, south of New York, boulders, or rolled pebbles, must be employed.

As the harder stones cost much more to break than the softer ones, the lower courses of the road may be formed of the latter, and the former reserved for covering the surface, which has to resist the grinding action of the wheels.*

In alluvial countries, where stone is scanty, and wood plenty, an artificial stone may be formed by making the clay into balls, and burning them till they are nearly vitrified. The slag, or refuse, of iron furnaces, makes an excellent material. The stony or slaty part of coal may

* This is the practice on the avenues of New York; broken gneiss being put below, and covered with broken boulders, which cost three times as much to break.

be used near collieries. Cubes of iron have been imbedded among the stones with some advantages.*

SIZE OF THE STONE.

The stone should be broken into pieces, which are as nearly cubical as possible, (rejecting splinters and slices) and the largest of which, in its longest dimensions, can pass through a ring *two and a half inches* in diameter. In reducing them to this size, there will of course be many smaller stones in the mass. These are the proper dimensions, according to *Telford* and *Parnell.*† *Edgeworth* prefers 1½ inches. *Penfold*‡ names two inches for brittle materials. If smaller they would crush too easily; but on the other hand, the less the size of the fragments, the smaller are the interstices exposed to be filled with water and mud. The tougher the stone, the smaller may it be broken. The less its size, the sooner will it make a hard road; and for roads little travelled, and over which only light weights pass, the stones may be reduced to the size of one inch.

Fig. 108.

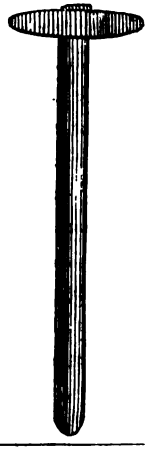


McAdam argues that the size of the stone used on a road must be in due proportion to the space occupied on a smooth level surface, by a wheel of ordinary dimensions; and, as it has about an inch of contact longitudinally, therefore every stone in a road exceeding *one inch* in diameter, is mischievous; for the one-sided bearing of the wheel on a larger stone will tend to turn it over and to loosen the neighboring materials. But this argument proves too much; for however small the stone is, there must be a moment, just as the wheel is leaving it, when the pressure is one-sided, and therefore tends to overturn it. Subsequently McAdam preferred the standard of

* Parnell, p. 245. † Ibid. p. 133. ‡ Pages 14, 15.

weight to that of size, and made six ounces the maximum, (corresponding for average materials to cubes of $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches, or $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches in their longest diagonal) directing his overseers to carry a pair of scales and a 6-oz. weight, with which to try the largest stones in a pile. The weight standard has the advantage, that the stones are smaller as they increase in specific gravity, to which the hardness is generally proportional. He subsequently says that he had "not allowed any stone above *three* ounces in weight (equal to cubes of $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches, or 2 inches in their longest diagonal) to be put on the Bath and Bristol roads for the last three years, and found the benefit in the smoothness and durability of the work as well as economy of repairs."* On examining old roads he found that the average size of the stones varied from seven to twenty-seven ounces in weight, and that "the state of disrepair and the amount of expense on the several roads was in a pretty exact proportion to the size of the material used."† The French engineers value *uniformity* of size much less than McAdam, and call it "rather an evil than a good." They therefore use equally all sizes from $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches to dust.‡

Fig. 109.



BREAKING THE STONE.

The weight and shape of the hammer, and the manner of using it, are of much importance, making a difference of at least 10 per cent. The head of the hammer should be six inches long, and weigh about one pound; and the handle be tough and flexible, and 3 feet long, if used standing, or 18 inches, if used sitting, which is better. The laborer sits before the pile, and breaks the stones on it, or on a large concave stone as an anvil, on which the stones to be bro-

* Letter of 1834, in Am. Railroad Journal, Jan. 10, 1835.
† System of Roadmaking, 1825. ‡ Gayffier, p. 201.

ken are placed, resting only on their ends, so that, being struck sharply in their middle, they break into angular fragments. Children with smaller hammers can do the lighter work, so that a whole family may be employed. The workmen should not be paid by the day, but at an equitable price per cubic yard. A medium laborer can break in a day from $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 yards of gneiss; but only $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ yard of hard boulders, or "cobble-stones."

THICKNESS OF THE COATING.

Twelve inches of well consolidated materials on a good bottom, will be sufficient for roads of the greatest travel, and will resist all usual weights, and frosts. In the climate of France, ten inches is considered enough for the most frequented roads, and six or eight inches for others. The thickness should vary with the soil, the nature of the materials, and the character of the travel over it; it should be such that the greatest load will not affect more than the surface of the shell; and it is for this purpose chiefly that thickness is required, in order that the weight which comes on a small part only of the road may be spread over a large portion of the foundation. The severe frosts of our northern states require the maximum of depth.*

McAdam advocates less thickness than the other English constructors. He considers from 7 to 10 inches sufficient, calling the latter depth of "well consolidated materials equal to carry any thing." He adds, "some new roads of six inches in depth were not at all affected by a very severe winter; and another road having been allowed

* Stone broken into fragments of from 1 to 6 inches occupies twice as much space as in the original solid state; but the broken stone placed upon the road is reduced by the pressure of the wheels to two-thirds of its former bulk, or more exactly seven-tenths.

to wear down to only three inches, this was found sufficient to prevent the water from penetrating, and thus to escape any injury by frost." He earnestly advocates the principle that the whole science of artificial road-making consists in making a solid dry path on the natural soil, and then keeping it dry by a durable water-proof coating. "The broken stone is only to preserve the under road from moisture, and not at all to support the vehicles, the weight of which must be really borne by the native soil, which, while preserved *dry*, will carry any weight, and does in fact carry the stone road itself as well as the carriages upon it." . . . "The stone is employed to form a secure, smooth, water-tight flooring, over which vehicles may pass with safety and expedition at all seasons of the year." . . . "Its thickness should be regulated only by the quantity of material necessary to form such a flooring, and not at all by any consideration as to its own independent power of bearing weight." . . . "The erroneous idea that the evils of an undrained wet clayey soil can be remedied by a large quantity of materials, has caused a large part of the costly and unsuccessful expenditures in making broken-stone roads."*

APPLICATION OF THE MATERIALS.

The road-bed, having been thoroughly drained, must be properly shaped and sloped each way from the centre, so as to discharge what water may penetrate to it, and not, as is often practised, be made level, and the crowning given by a greater thickness of stone in the middle. Upon this bed, a coating of *three* inches of the clean broken stones, free from any earthy mixture, is to be spread

* McAdam—"System of Road-making," *passim.*

on a dry day. The travel is then to be admitted on it, men being stationed to rake in the ruts as soon as formed, or a heavy roller used, till it becomes almost consolidated, but not completely so, (the determination of this time being a nice and important practical point) and a second coat of three inches is then to be added during a wet time, as moisture greatly facilitates the union of the two. A third coat is added as was the second, and a fourth if that be required. If the stone be very hard, and the wheeling very difficult, fine clean gravel, free from earth, may be spread over the surface; but it is better for the future solidity of the road to dispense with this, if possible.

If a thick coat be laid on at once, there is a very great destruction of the material before it becomes consolidated, if it ever does so. The stones will not allow one another to be quiet, but are continually elbowing each other, and driving their neighbors to the right and to the left. This constant motion rapidly wears off the angular points, and reduces the stones to a spherical shape, which, in conjunction with the amount of mud and powder produced, destroys the possibility of any firm aggregation, and the road never attains its proper condition of hardness.*

The broken stones need not be spread over a greater width than from 12 to 16 feet, (except near large cities) and "wings" of earth may be left on each side. For a road little used a single track of 8 feet of the "metal" will suffice.†

The perfect *cleanliness* of the stones is strongly insisted on by McAdam. He directs the broken stones to be very carefully kept perfectly free from any mixture of earth, or any matter which will imbibe water, or be affected by frost; since roads

* Penfold, p. 15. † See page 47.

made with such a mixture become loose in wet weather, and allow the wheels of carriages to displace the materials, and to cut through to the original soil, thus making the roads rough and rutty, the admission of water being the great evil. He adds that nothing must be laid on the clean stone under the pretence of "binding;" for clean broken stone will combine by its own angles into a smooth solid surface, which cannot be affected by vicissitudes of weather, nor displaced by the action of wheels.

The French engineers consider this cleanliness as unnecessary, since the travelling on the road very soon pulverizes the materials, and fills the interstices with dust and mud; though it might be replied that this took place only on the surface. Some of them, observing the large amount of vacant space in a mass of broken stone,* have even proposed to combine with it in advance a certain proportion of calcareous stone,† or even clay and sand,‡ just sufficient to fill up the existing vacancies. This would doubtless make a road *tolerably* fit for use much sooner than the regular plan, but its permeability to water would entail on it all the evils mentioned in the preceding paragraph.

* A cubic *metre* of broken stones, placed in a water-tight box, which they just fill, can receive in the empty spaces between the fragments a volume of water $= \frac{48}{100}$, or nearly one-half of the whole, the actual solidity of the stones being therefore only $\frac{52}{100}$. This does not vary for stones from 1 to 8 inches in size. After prolonged travel it increases to $\frac{71}{100}$, leaving a void of only $\frac{29}{100}$. For rolled pebbles and sand the actual solidity may be as much as $\frac{62}{100}$. For perfect spheres, calculation shows that the solidity of a mass of them increases as their diameter decreases. Thus, if a cubic metre be filled with spheres 4 inches in diameter, their solid volume will be $\frac{63}{100}$; if they are 1 inch in diameter their volume is $\frac{70}{100}$; and if only $\frac{1}{25}$ inch, it is $\frac{74}{100}$. Pebbles by theory, as well as by the experiment above cited, would be intermediate between broken stones and spheres.—(Gayffier, pp. 204 to 214.)

† M. Polonceau. ‡ M. Girard de Caudemberg.

ROLLING.

The use of a very heavy roller will much facilitate the consolidation of the road. A plan highly recommended* is to have a roller made of a hollow cylinder, of cast iron, or covered with iron bands, seven feet in diameter, and five feet long. A strong axle passes through its length. Its ends are closed, and two interior partitions, perpendicular to the axis, divide it into three equal chambers. A longitudinal band of the surface, a foot wide, can be detached, so as to give access to the interior spaces, which are filled with gravel, one or all of them, according to the weight desired. The empty cylinder weighs 7000 lbs.; each compartment filled with gravel adds 4,000 lbs. to the weight; so that the entire weight may be made successively 7,000 lbs., 11,000 lbs., 15,000 lbs., and 19,000 lbs. To compress a new road, ten or twelve strong horses should be attached, on a wet day in summer, to the *empty* roller, and draw it several times over every part of the road, till the materials have been so far compressed as not to form a ridge in front of the roller. Then the middle division is to be filled with gravel, (moistened, to give it solidity) and the rolling resumed till the draught is so much lessened that the end divisions can be filled, the middle one being emptied at first if necessary. There should be an excess of power in the horses, so that they may do less injury by the violent pressures of their feet. Every part of the road should be passed over from 40 to 100 times. To increase the stability of the compression obtained, an inch of gravel should be spread over the surface and passed over by the roller a few times. If the weather

* Gayffier, p. 212.

be dry, the surface should be watered. The season should be summer, that the road-bed may be dry, and the day be wet, to ensure a moist surface, which facilitates the binding of the materials.

When the rolling has finished the compression, the road is still very different from one which has borne the traffic of many years; for although the materials are strongly pressed against one another, and have taken a stable position, they have not acquired the adhesion which takes place after a series of years. The new road, therefore, needs for some time most careful attention. The travel must finish it by being forced to pass over every part of it uniformly, heaps of pebbles being placed very irregularly, so as to direct the vehicles successively on all the points of the road. Every rut, and the slightest hollows and elevations, must be promptly removed by a liberal supply of laborers, whose work will, however, have been greatly lessened by the previous rolling. They must rake over every inequality of surface the moment that it is formed.

KEEPING UP A ROAD.

This is a very different thing from "repairing a road," though the two are often confounded. A due attention to the former will greatly lessen the necessity for the latter. The former keeps the road always in good condition; the latter makes it so only occasionally, after intervals of various length, during which it is continually deteriorating in a geometrical ratio, so that *the better the state* in which the road is kept, the less are the injuries to it, and therefore, *the less the expense* of keeping it in this excellent condition.

"Keeping up the road" requires the daily attention of

a permanent corps of laborers. Supposing the road to be already in good condition; that is, in proper shape, and free from holes, ruts, mud, and dust; to keep it so, requires two fundamental operations:

1. The continual removal of the daily wear of the materials, whether in the shape of mud or of dust;

2. The employment of materials to replace those removed.

The first operation requires hoes and brooms. The hoes should be three feet long, and of wood, as iron ones would be more likely to loosen the stones. The lighter dust and more liquid mud must be swept off by birch brooms. The detritus between the little projections of the stones should not be removed by too thorough sweeping, as it protects them from immediate crushing, and preserves their stability. The broom is also necessary to remove every trace of wheels, the moment they have passed, so as to oppose that habit or instinct of horses which leads them to follow in the track of the preceding vehicle, and which would soon convert unremoved tracks into ruts. The broom and hoe have then a double end to be accomplished by the same operation, viz., effacing tracks and removing detritus. Very effective machines have also been constructed for accomplishing these purposes.*

The second operation of applying new materials demands several precautions. To prevent a weak place from being neglected because the materials are not at hand, they should be kept in *dépôts*, never more than a quarter of a mile apart, and carried thence in barrows. They should be applied after a rain, as then they will more easily unite, and no coat, thicker than one stone,

* Roads and Railroads, p. 91.

should ever be applied at any one time. A cubic yard to a superficial rod will be quite enough at once. They will then soon become incorporated without having their angles worn out by motion, and will be of as much service as double the thickness applied at once. To avoid retarding the travel and increasing the draught too much, a new coat should not be put on any continuous space larger than six or seven square yards. If several depressions are found very near each other, cover the worst, and attend to the next after the first has become solid. The ruts which are formed should not be filled with loose stone, for this would make longitudinal ridges of harder material, but "the laborer should work the rake backwards and forwards on each side of the rut and across it; and if he do it with his eyes shut, he will do more good, than by taking pains to gather all the stones he can find to place in it."*

The number of men required by this system of constant watchfulness may at first seem an objection to it, but the expense will be amply repaid by the advantages obtained. Each laborer should have a certain length of the road assigned to his especial care, and the most intelligent and trustworthy among them should be made inspectors over the others for a certain distance. At times unfavorable for work on the road, they should be employed in breaking stone. The labor of one man will keep in repair three miles of well-made and well-drained road, for the first two years after its formation, and four miles for the next two years, by constantly spreading loose stones in the hollows, raking them from the middle to the sides, opening the ditches, &c. In the fifth year

* Penfold, p. 20.

some repairs, "with lifting," may be necessary, as explained under the next head.*

It will be seen by Morin's table, on page 63, that the friction or resistance to draught on a road with deep ruts and thick mud, is four times as great as on one in good order. This shows the importance of very perfectly "keeping up" the road. An incidental advantage is, that the prompt removal of the mud after every shower will prevent the annoyance of dust, so general an objection to McAdam roads, but not at all their necessary concomitant.

Where the materials of the road are very brittle stone, they wear away very rapidly in dry weather, and their consumption may be much lessened by *watering* the road judiciously; not so little as to form a crust which adheres to the wheel, nor so much as to make the draught heavy. A moderate use of the watering cart preserves the materials from pulverization, and keeps them settled in their places, at the same time that the comfort of the traveller is greatly enhanced. This is particularly necessary on roads in this country during our hot and dry summers; for after a long drought the crust of the road sometimes becomes so dried out that it ceases to "bind," and permits loose stones to be detached from it, to the great injury of the surface. An excess of moisture must, however, be avoided, since it increases the grinding power of the pulverized stones, as marble is sawn and jewels are cut with their own powder combined with water.

The question may arise, whether the materials thus gradually added to the road, for alimentation rather than reparation, are sufficient to make up for its annual loss,

* See Am. Railroad Journal, March 13, 1847.

and diminution of depth, which is too small for direct measurement. Experiments upon this point indicate that the amount of materials annually consumed, and therefore to be replaced, is one cubic yard per mile* for each "collar," or beast of burden passing over it. Others consider it only two-thirds of a cubic yard.†

REPAIRING A ROAD.

A road properly *kept up* by daily attention, needs no *repairs;* but if it be put in order only at intervals, the injuries to it, which have been increasing in geometrical progression, will render very serious repairs necessary. It will be found cut into ruts, deep holes, and irregular projections; and often lower in the middle than at the sides. It must be put into shape, and restored to its proper cross-section, by cutting down the sides, and filling up the middle part. Only a single thin coat of stone should be applied at a time,—not more than a cubic yard to a rod superficial. The surface of the old road may be lightly picked up, or "lifted," (with strong short picks) merely burying the point of the pick one or two inches deep, so that the new materials may be more readily united to the old ones. This is especially necessary on declivities, to prevent the stones rolling down the slope.

When the road to be repaired is one which had been originally formed of large stones, and of superfluous thickness, no new materials should be brought upon it, but the old stones should be loosened with picks, gathered by strong rakes to the side of the road, and there broken to the proper size. The surface of the road having been put in proper shape, the broken stones are to be returned

* Dupuis, *Annales des Ponts et Chaussees*, 1842. † Gayffier, p. 232.

to it, being scattered uniformly and thinly over the surface. Only a small space of road should be thus broken up at once, say six or eight feet in length, but the whole width. The old plan of repairing would be to fill up the holes with an additional supply of the same large materials; but the method here recommended makes more work for men and less for horses, and produces a great saving in expense.

The best *season* for repairing broken-stone roads is in the spring or early summer, when the weather is neither very wet nor very dry, for either of these extremes prevents the materials from consolidating, and therefore produces either a heavy or a dusty road. If made at this season, the roads are left in a good state for the summer, and become consolidated and hard, so as to be in a condition to resist the work of the ensuing winter.*

TELFORD ROADS.

This name may be given to the roads of broken stone which rest on a peculiar pavement, as constructed by Telford, on the Holyhead road and elsewhere, and of which he has given the following specification for a width of thirty feet. Fig. 110 is a section of the carriage-way of such a road.

Fig. 110.



"Upon the level bed† prepared for the road materials,

* James Walker.

† A bed with the same cross-section as the final road, would certainly be preferable, to ensure drainage. The pavement would then require to be of the same depth at centre and sides.

a *bottom course or layer of stones* is to be set by hand in the form of a close, firm pavement. The stones set in the middle of the road are to be seven inches in depth; at nine feet from the centre, five inches; at twelve from the centre, four inches; and at fifteen feet, three inches.* They are to be set on their *broadest edges and lengthwise across the road*, and the breadth of the upper edge is not to exceed four inches in any case. All the irregularities of the upper part of the said pavement are to be broken off by the hammer, and all the interstices to be filled with stone chips, firmly wedged or packed by hand with a light hammer, so that when the whole pavement is finished, there shall be a convexity of four inches in the breadth of fifteen feet from the centre.

"The middle eighteen feet of pavement is to be coated with hard stones to the depth of six inches. Four of these six inches are to be first put on and worked in by carriages and horses; care being taken to rake in the ruts until the surface becomes firm and consolidated, after which the remaining two inches are to be put on. The whole of this stone is to be broken into pieces as nearly cubical as possible, so that the largest piece, in its longest dimensions, may pass through a ring of two inches and a half inside diameter.

"The paved spaces, on each side of the eighteen middle feet, are to be coated with broken stones, or well cleansed, strong gravel, up to the footpath or other boundary of the road, so as to make the whole convexity of the road six inches from the centre to the sides of it. The whole of the materials are to be covered with a binding of an inch

* The curved section thus obtained, has been shown, on page 50, to be inferior to plane slopes on each side of the centre.

and a half in depth, of good gravel, free from clay or earth."*

The propriety of this foundation, ("*Bottoming*," or "*Pitching*") has been the subject of earnest controversy between the partisans of McAdam and those of Telford. The following are the defects imputed to a road of broken stones, laid on earth, (especially clay) without any foundation.

The weight of vehicles forces the lower stones into the earth, which rises up into the interstices and forms a mixture of earth and stones which will always be loose and open, and never consolidate into a compact mass. In winter the water, which will penetrate, is frozen and breaks up the road. After a thaw and in wet weather, the road is a quagmire, the wheels cut deeply into it, and sometimes through the entire thickness, so that it resembles a ploughed field. At the best, after a rain the semi-fluid soil will rise up to the surface and form a coat of mud; and after a drought the looseness of the stones will make them rub off their angles and soon wear out. Nor will any thickness of broken stones thoroughly destroy the elasticity of the soil, the evils of which were shown on page 58.

McAdam maintains that thorough draining will prevent all these evils, but Telford thinks that they can be removed only by the "bottoming," for which he claims the following advantages.

Roads, being in fact artificial structures, which have to sustain great weights and violent percussion, the first object must be to obtain a permanently firm and stable foundation.

This is effected by the plan of "bottoming;" for by it the pressure of the wheels is distributed over a large

* Parnell, pp. 133–4.

space. Suppose that the wheel touches and presses on a surface of 2 square inches. This pressure is carried to the foundation stones, which rest at their bottom on a broad surface, averaging 10 by 5 inches, or 50 square inches, so that each square inch of the soil receives only one-twenty-fifth part of the surface pressure, and there is therefore no danger of the pavement stones being pressed into it, nor of the soil being forced to ooze up between them. On a new embankment of soft earth it is best to lay brush or furze, and place the pavement upon this.

The advantages of this system are most striking when the natural soil is retentive of moisture, as when it is clay. The pavement then acts as an under-drain to carry off the water which may find its way through the broken-stone surface. Even on a rock this pavement may be laid with advantage, to form a clear floor.

When the stones are properly set, and wedged with the stone chippings, they will never rise to the surface.* To avoid disturbing them, the carts which bring the broken stone must not be allowed to pass over the foundation.

From the moment that a road thus made begins to be used, it becomes daily harder and smoother. The strength of the resulting surface admits of carriages being drawn over it with the least possible distress to horses. The broken stones being on an immoveable dry bed, do not

* Large stones, placed under a road and not thus wedged down, will invariably work up to the surface. Thus, over Breslington Common, England, the whole of the original soil had been covered at great expense with large flag-stones, and the road-covering laid upon them. Their motion kept the surface in a loose, open state, till, on the road being dug open, they were found almost entirely *turned upon their edges*, having been acting with the force of levers upon the road, which they had made to crack and sink, without the cause at such a depth being suspected.—*McAdam.*

mix with the soil, and become perfectly united together into one solid mass.

The parts of the Holyhead road formed with such a foundation, were unaffected by a series of unusually severe frosts, followed by thaws and heavy rains, while the parts of it differently made, and other roads in the neighborhood, were broken up, and "became as bad as a bog."*

A road thus constructed will in most cases cost less than one entirely of broken stone; for the course of foundation-stones may be of any cheap and inferior stone, as sand-stone, &c., which will bear weight, and not be decomposed by the atmosphere, but which would not be sufficiently hard and tough for the broken-stone covering. The cost of hammering and setting this pavement will be less than that of breaking up an equal mass, and the total amount of stone employed will be no more than would have been required for a road entirely of broken stone.

But even if such a road cost more at first, it would be cheaper in the end; for, beside the saving of draught, stones laid on such a pavement last much longer than those laid on earth, two courses of the former outlasting three of the latter. The expense of scraping is lessened in the same or even a greater proportion.

On the other hand, it is objected that, between the wheel above and the foundation-stone beneath, the broken stone will be in a situation like that of the grain between two millstones, and must therefore be more rapidly ground to powder than if on a soft bottom.† But this will be prevented by using harder stone for the surface than for the foundation.

* Telford. First Report on Holyhead roads. † Penfold, p. 8.

McAdam also maintains that the materials last longer on a soft and elastic bottom than on a hard one; and instances a road in Somersetshire, where a part of it is "over a morass so extremely soft that when you ride in a carriage along the road, you see the water tremble in the ditches on each side," and is succeeded by a bottom of limestone rock, continuing for five or six miles. An exact account of the expenditure on each having been kept, it was found that the cost of keeping up the soft was to that of the hard only as five to seven; *i. e.* five tons of stone on the former would last as long as seven on the latter. But this seems an exceptional case, being contrary to all other experience. Sir John Macneill testifies very strongly that the annual *saving* of a paved bottom will be one-third of the expense in any case, and that if the diminished amount of horse labor were considered, it would be very considerably more than that.*

An artificial *substitute* for a pavement foundation, consisting of a *concrete*, or composition of Roman cement and gravel, has been employed with great success on a wet and elastic soil, where every thing else had failed, and where stones for bottoming would have been very expensive. The locality was the Highgate Archway Road near London, in a deep cutting between two high banks of clay, where the soil was surcharged with water. Many attempts at draining had been made, and a great thickness of broken stone had been used, and subsequently relaid on furze and pieces of waste tin. But the stone mixed with the wet clay, and rapidly wore away, becoming round and smooth, without ever consolidating, and the road was almost impassable. The Parliamentary Commissioners finally took charge of it, and Sir John Macneill succeeded in making a perfect road. Four longitudinal drains were made the whole length of the road, cross drains at every 90 feet, and

* Parnell, p. 163.

intermediate small drains at every 30 feet under the cement.* On the prepared centre, of eighteen feet in width, after it had been properly levelled, was put a layer, six inches thick, of the concrete, formed of one part of Roman cement, one of sand, and eight of stones. The sand and cement were mixed dry in a large shallow trough; the gravel was added; as little water as possible was used; and the whole mixture was then cast upon the ground. Before it had set, a triangular piece of wood was indented into the surface, so as to leave, at every four inches, a triangular groove for the broken stones to lie in and fasten into. These grooves fell three inches from the centre to the sides of the road, in order to carry off any water which might percolate through the broken stones above it. Six inches of these were laid upon it when it had sufficiently hardened, (which was in about fifteen minutes) and the sides or wings were filled up with flint gravel. The concrete cost at that place 50 cents per square yard six inches thick. The object was to attain a dry and solid foundation for the broken stone. The result was an excellent road, undisturbed by severe frosts, and on which one horse could draw as much as three in its original state.

4. PAVED ROADS.†

A good pavement should offer little resistance to wheels, but give a firm foothold to horses; it should be so durable as to seldom require taking up; it should be as free as possible from noise and dust; and when it is laid in the streets of a city, it should be susceptible of easy removal and replacement to give access to gas and water pipes.

A common but very inferior pavement, which disgraces the streets of nearly all our cities, is constructed of rounded

* See Parnell, pp. 157 and 160, and plates to Simms on Roads.

† Gayffier, pp. 193–8; Marlette, pp. 104–8; Jullien, pp. 316–18; Parnell, pp. 110–123, 348–359; Mahan, pp. 292–5; Journal of Franklin Institute, Sept. Oct. 1843.

water-worn *pebbles*, or "cobble-stones." The best are of an elliptical shape, from 5 to 10 inches deep, and of a diameter equal to half their depth. They are set with their greatest length upright, and their broadest end uppermost. Under them is a bed of sand or gravel a foot or two deep. They are rammed over three times, and a layer of fine gravel spread over them to fill their interstices.*

The glaring faults of this pavement are that the stones, being supported only by the friction of the very narrow space at which they are in contact, are easily pressed down by heavy loads into the loose bottom, thus forming holes and depressions; and at best offer great resistance to draught, cause great noise, cannot be easily cleaned, and need very frequent repairs and renewals.†

The pavement which combines most perfectly all desirable requisites, is formed of squared blocks of stone, resting on a stable foundation, and laid diagonally.

We will examine successively the merits of different foundations; the quality of stone preferable; their most advantageous size and shape; their arrangement; the manner of laying them; their borders and curbs; their advantages; and their comparison with McAdam roads.

* The following is part of the specification for the New York pavement: "The paving stones must be heavy and hard, and not less than six inches in depth, nor more than ten inches in any direction. Stones of similar size are to be placed together. They are to be bedded endwise in good clean gravel, twelve inches in depth. They shall all be set perpendicularly, and closely paved on their ends, and not be set on their sides or edges in any cases whatever."

† The cost of such a pavement for a new street is in New York from 50 to 75 cents per square yard; for repairing an old street, about 20 cents.

FOUNDATIONS.

The want of a proper foundation is one of the most frequent causes of the failures of pavements. A foundation should be composed of a sufficient thickness of some incompressible material, which will effectually cut off all connection between the subsoil and the bottom of the paving-stones, and should rest upon a well-drained bottom, for which in cities a perfect system of sewerage is indispensable. The principal foundations are those of *sand*, of *broken stone*, of *pebbles*, and of *concrete*.

Foundations of sand.—This material, when it fills an excavation, possesses the valuable properties of incompressibility, and of assuming a new position of equilibrium and stability when any portion of it is disturbed. To secure these qualities in their highest degree, the sand should be very carefully freed from the least admixture of earth or clay, and the largest grains should not exceed one-sixth of an inch in diameter, nor the smallest be less than one-twenty-fifth of an inch. The bed of the road should be excavated to the desired width and depth, and be shaped with a slope each way from the centre, corresponding with that which is to be given to the pavement. This earth bottom should be well rammed, and a layer of sand, four inches thick, be put on, be thoroughly wetted, and be beaten with a rammer weighing forty pounds. Two other layers are to be in like manner added, and the compression will reduce the thickness of twelve inches to eight. The number of layers should be regulated by the character of the subsoil. Two inches of loose sand are to be then added to fill the joints of the stones, which may be now laid. The pressure of loads upon these stones is spread by the incompressible sand over a large surface

of the earth beneath. This is the favorite system in France.*

Foundations of broken stone.—A bed is to be excavated, deep enough to allow twelve inches of broken stone to be placed under the pavement. A layer of four inches is first put on, and the street then opened for carriages to pass through it. When it has become firm and consolidated, another layer of four inches is added and worked in as before; and finally a third layer; making in fact a complete McAdam road. Upon it the dressed paving-stones are set.† This method, though efficient, is very inconvenient, from the length of time which it occupies, and the difficulty of draught while it is in progress.

Foundations of pebbles.—Such a pebble pavement as is described on page 217, resting itself on sand, gravel, or broken stones, is strongly recommended to be adopted as the foundation of the dressed block pavement, for streets in which there is a great deal of travel.‡

Foundations of Concrete.—Concrete is a mortar of finely-pulverized quicklime, sand, and gravel, which are mixed dry, and to which water is added to bring the mass to the proper consistence. It must be used immediately. *Béton* (to which the name of Concrete is often improperly given) is a mixture of *hydraulic* mortar with gravel or broken stone; the mortar being first prepared, fine gravel incorporated with it, the layer of broken stones subsequently added to a layer of it 5 or 6 inches thick, and the whole mass rapidly brought by the hoe and shovel to a homogeneous state. Three parts of sand, one of hydraulic lime, and three of broken stone is a good proportion. A mixture of one part of Roman cement, one of

* Gayffier, p. 126. † Parnell, p. 117.

‡ Committee of Franklin Institute, and Parnell, p. 116.

sand, and eight of stone, has also been employed very successfully. *Béton* is much superior to Concrete for moist localities.*

The excavation should be made fourteen inches lower than the *bottom* of the proposed pavement, and filled with that depth of the concrete or *béton*, which sets very rapidly, and becomes a hard, solid mass, on which a pavement may then be laid. This is, perhaps, the most efficient of all the foundations, but also the most costly at first, though this would be balanced by its permanence and saving of repairs. It admits of access to subterraneous pipes with less injury to the neighboring pavement than any other, for the concrete may be broken through at any point without unsettling the foundation for a considerable distance around it, as is the case with foundations of sand or broken stones; and when the concrete is replaced, the pavement can be at once reset at its proper level, without the uncertain allowance for settling which is necessary in other cases. The blocks set on the concrete are usually laid in mortar. We will examine presently the propriety of this.

QUALITY OF STONE.

The stone should be of a kind which will not wear smooth, but which will always remain rough on the surface. Many varieties of granite are of this character, and are therefore very suitable. The hardest stones are the best, and their specific gravity is a tolerable test of their hardness. The hardest stones will also absorb but $\frac{1}{3}\frac{1}{7}\frac{1}{5}$ of their volume of water; tender ones will absorb $\frac{1}{2}\frac{1}{1}$. The hardest stones also, when struck by a hammer, give a clearer and more ringing sound than soft ones. Tender

* Mahan, p. 40.

stones may be made much more durable by plunging them in boiling bitumen, which penetrates their pores and prevents them from absorbing water, which is the most powerful agent in their disintegration.

SIZE AND SHAPE.

The size of the stones should be proportioned to the number and weight of the vehicles which will pass over them, and as each stone is liable to have resting upon it the entire weight borne by one wheel, it should be large enough to sustain this weight without being crushed, or depressed. It should also be no larger than a horse's hoof, so as to prevent any slipping upon its surface, even where unbroken by joints; but the fulfilment of the first condition will generally make this impossible, and the selection of a proper quality of stone will render it unnecessary. If stones of different dimensions are admitted, they should be assorted, and only those of the same size should be used near each other, or the small ones will sink below the rest, and the depressions thus formed will be increased by every passing wheel. It is therefore very desirable that they should be uniform in size. *Cubes of eight inches* in every direction seem to combine most of these requisites. They should be very slightly tapering towards their lower ends, thus making them truncated pyramids.* If they are much larger than this standard, the weight of a wheel coming on one end of one of them, will tend to depress it and to elevate the other end, so

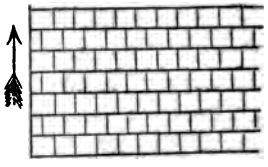
* Blocks of this size cost in Philadelphia delivered on the street, $2.75 per square yard of surface. Laying a bed of gravel 15 inches deep, setting the stone, &c., cost 50 cents more, making the entire cost of the pavement $3.25 per square yard.

that such large stones would be less firm than smaller ones.

Hexagonal blocks have been suggested, and would form a more compact mass than those of any other shape; but their superiority in this respect would probably not compensate for the extra cost of cutting them.

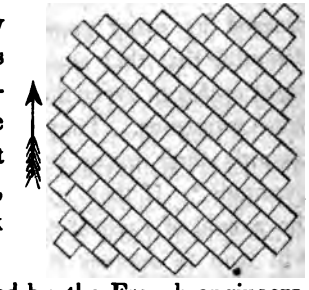
ARRANGEMENT.

Fig. 111.



The rectangular stones may be laid in continuous courses across the road, but so as to "break joints" in the direction of its length, as shown in Fig. 111. It has been observed, however, that when stones are laid, as is usual, with their joints parallel and perpendicular to the direction of the road, they wear away most rapidly upon the edges which run across the road, since these receive most directly the shocks of the wheels, and that the stones thus become convex. To prevent this, and to secure equal wear, they should be laid so that the joints cross the road obliquely, making an angle of 45° with the axis of the roadway. One set of joints may be continuous, but the others should break joints, as in Fig. 112.

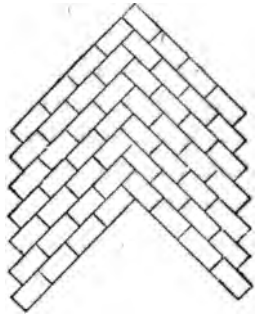
Fig. 112.



Oblong stones are preferred by the French engineers, with their upper surfaces nine inches by five and a half. They should be laid, (if not diagonally) so that their greatest length is across the street, their narrowest dimension being that passed over by the wheels. They thus offer less

resistance to draught than cubical blocks, according to the experiments of Morin.

Fig. 113.



In the steep streets of Genoa the stones are laid in oblique courses, pointing up the ascent, and meeting at an angle in the centre. The continuous joints, which descend to the right and to the left, facilitate the discharge of the rainwater.

MANNER OF LAYING.

The top surface of the foundation (of whatever material it may be) which forms the bed for the paving-stones, is to be shaped, as directed on page 50, sloping each way from the centre, with inclinations ranging from 1 in 50 to 1 in 100, flatter in proportion to the smoothness of the surface. The stones should be so set that the joints between them will not exceed one quarter of an inch. But as they are not cut regularly enough to touch on every part of their surface, some substance must be interposed to fill up the vacancies, and to enable them to support each other. Mortar is used for this purpose on foundations of concrete, and even on those of sand and broken stone. Sometimes gravel is put between them, and a grouting of lime-water poured in. Iron chippings are added to the gravel to increase the adherence. But no adherent compound, such as these, can resist the continual vibrations and play of the pavement. Some other substance should therefore be employed, which will change its position of equilibrium, and never cease to fill up the spaces between the stones, whatever shocks they

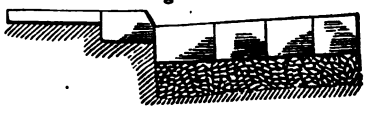
may receive. Such a substance is pure *sand.* The quality necessary has been indicated on page 218. A coating of an inch should also be spread over the stones. When the foundation is any thing but concrete, the paving-stones must be rammed, after a certain portion has been laid, with a maul weighing 60 lbs., and those which break under this must be replaced, and those which sink, taken up and reset.

BORDERS AND CURBS.

When the paved road forms the middle portion, or causeway, of a wider road, with wings of earth or broken stone on each side of it, its edges must be supported against the lateral thrust of the stones, by *borders* of larger blocks, 9 or 10 inches wide, 13 to 18 inches long, and 13 inches deep. They are laid as headers and stretchers, so as to form a bond with the pavement. Their outer edge should also have occasional projections into the wings, so that a rut may not be there formed.

When the pavement is a city street, the curb-stones should be long blocks.* There should be no gutter or other channel than that formed, as in the figure, by the meeting of the inclined pavement with the curb-stone, which should rise six inches above the pavement, and be sunk as deep into the ground as possible. The foot pavements should

Fig. 114.



* In the specifications for the New York pavements, the Curb-stones are required to be not less than 3 feet long, 5 inches thick, and 20 inches wide; and the Gutter-stones to be not less than three feet long, 6 inches thick, and 14 inches wide.

incline towards the street at the rate of one inch in ten feet, or 1 in 120.*

ADVANTAGES.

The *advantages* of such a pavement are its smoothness and uniformity of surface, enabling vehicles to be drawn over it with ease to the horses, comfort to the passengers, and but little wear and tear of the carriages, which can be therefore made much lighter than at present. At the same time it gives a good foothold to the horses; causes very little noise, yet enough to warn the foot-passengers of the approach of a vehicle, and is very easily cleaned of the dirt which may collect upon it. It is also very durable, thereby rendering unnecessary the frequent stoppage of a street for repairs; and though at first more expensive than cobble-stones, is finally far more economical.

PAVED AND McADAM ROADS COMPARED.

McAdam maintains that his roads are preferable to pavements, even for the streets of cities. He argues that they are cheaper, as requiring no more stone than pavements, admitting an inferior quality, and costing less for repairs; and that they give greater facility of travelling, and cause less annoyance from dust, when properly swept and watered. But experience in the streets of London shows the cost of broken-stone roads to be far greater than pavements, to which they are inferior in every respect.† The result of very full discussions at the Civil Engineers' Institution was, that a whin or granite pavement, of proper form and depth, laid on a sound bottom, is preferable to

* Parnell, p. 120. † Parnell, p. 126.

any other plan for carriageways in the metropolis and other large cities. The objections to the broken-stone roads are that they cannot resist the pressure caused by a very great intercourse, being liable to be thereby crushed and ground into dust, which is easily converted into mud; that this hasty and continual destruction and renewal would, in a great city, prove intolerably troublesome and expensive, while the dust in dry weather, and the mud in wet, would greatly incommode the intercourse in the streets, as well as private dwellings and public shops. The surface of broken stone is also more injurious to the feet of horses than a good pavement, and less easy for their labor; and the expense of making and maintaining the former would be at least fifty per cent. more than the latter.*

ROMAN ROADS.

The ancient Roman roads, which, even at the present day, after the lapse of nearly two thousand years, may be traced for miles, as perfect as when first constructed, were essentially dressed-stone pavements, with foundations of concrete, resting on sub-pavements. The most perfect modern constructions thus appear to be only imperfect and incomplete imitations. The direction and length of the intended road were marked out by two parallel furrows, from the space between which the loose earth was removed. The foundation of the road (*Statumen*) was composed of one or two courses of large flat stones, laid in mortar, a bed of which was first spread over the earth. Next came a course of concrete (*Rudus*) formed of broken stones mixed with quicklime, and

* Telford in Parnell, p. 351.

pounded with a rammer. If the stones were freshly broken ones, three parts of them were mixed with one of quicklime; if they were from old buildings, two parts of lime were used to three of the rubbish. The third course (*Nucleus*) was composed of broken bricks, tiles, and pottery, mixed with lime, which formed one-fourth of the whole. The mixture was spread in a thin layer, and in it were imbedded, so that their top surfaces were perfectly level, the large blocks of stone (*Summa crusta*) which formed the pavement. These stones were irregular polygons, usually with 5, 6, or 7 sides, rough on their under side, but smooth on top, and so perfectly fitted together that the joints were scarcely perceptible. The entire thickness of the four strata was about three feet. When the road passed over marshy ground, the foundation stones rested on a framework of timber, (made of a species of oak not subject to warp or shrink) and to protect this from the lime, it was covered with a bed of rushes or reeds, and sometimes of straw. On each side of the road were paved footpaths, and parapets; with stones at regular intervals for mounting on horseback. Milestones marked the distances to all parts of the empire from the *Milliarium aureum*, a gilt column in the Forum of Rome.

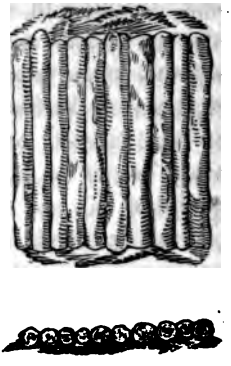
5. ROADS OF WOOD.

The abundance, and consequent cheapness, of wood in our new country, renders its employment in Road-making of great value. It has been used in the form of logs, of charcoal, of planks, and of blocks.

LOG ROADS.

When a road passes over soft swampy ground, always kept moist by springs, which cannot be drained without too much expense, and which is surrounded by a forest, it may be cheaply and rapidly made passable, by felling a sufficient number of young trees, as straight and as uniform in size as possible, and laying them side by side across the road at right angles to its length. This arrangement is well known under the name of a "*Corduroy*" road, of which the figure gives a top and end view. Though its successive hills and hollows offer great resistance to draught, and are very unpleasant to persons riding over it, it is nevertheless a very valuable substitute for a swamp, which in its natural state would at times be utterly impassable. But necessary and desirable as these roads may be to accomplish such an end in the infancy of a settlement, their retention upon a great thoroughfare is a disgraceful proof of indolence and want of enterprise in those who habitually travel over them; though several such instances might be specified.

Fig. 115.



CHARCOAL ROADS.

A very good road has been lately made through a swampy forest, by felling and burning the timber, and covering the surface with the charcoal thus prepared.

"Timber from six to eighteen inches through is cut twenty-four feet long, and piled up lengthwise in the centre of the road about five feet high, being nine feet wide at the bottom and two at the top, and then covered with straw and earth in the manner of coal-pits. The earth required to cover the pile, taken from either side, leaves two good-sized ditches, and the timber, although not split, is easily charred; and, when charred, the earth is removed to the side of the ditches, the coal raked down, to a width of fifteen feet, leaving it two feet thick at the centre and one at the sides, and the road is completed."

A road thus made in Michigan cost $660 per mile, and is said to be very compact and free from mud or dust. At a season when the mud on the adjoining earth road was half axletree deep, "on the coal road, there was not the least standing, and the impress of the feet of a horse passing rapidly over it was like that made on hard washed sand, as the surf recedes, on the shore of the lake. The water was not drained from the ditches, and yet there were no ruts or inequalities in the surface of the coal road, except what was produced by more compact packing on the line of travel. It is probable that coal will fully compensate for the deficiency of limestone and gravel in many sections of the west, and, where a road is to be constructed through forest land, that coal may be used at a fourth of the expense of limestone."*

* Report of the Commissioner of Patents for 1845, p. 1168.

PLANK ROADS.*

Roads of plank have been used in Russia for many years, and were thence introduced into Canada by Lord Sydenham, while Governor-general. Nearly 500 miles of them have been there constructed within the last nine years. They promise to be of especial value in the long stretches of soft vegetable soil, deprived of stone or gravel, but abounding in timber, which occupy so large a portion of the surface of our western and southern states. They are considered superior to McAdam roads in cheapness, in ease of draught, in speed, and in comfort to passengers.

For a single track, the planks (usually of hemlock, pine, or oak, according to the locality) should be *eight* feet long, and 3 or 4 inches thick, and be laid across the road, at right angles to its length. If laid lengthwise of the road, horses would be more liable to slip, and the ends would sometimes rise up; if laid obliquely, one end would tend to spring up when the weight of a vehicle pressed, unbalanced, upon the other. These planks rest on two longitudinal "sills," or "sleepers," four inches square, bedded in the earth to their full thickness. The earth must be fully up to the planks at every point; for if any empty space be left beneath them, the confined air will cause the rapid decay of the plank. It is not now considered necessary to pin or spike the planks to the sills, their weight being sufficient to keep them firm. Upon their upper surface a coating of clean plasterer's sand, an inch thick, is to be spread.

A single track requires turning-out places to be provided for it. To effect this an earthen road must be

* *G. Geddes*, C. E., Am. Railroad Journal, Jan. 16, 1847. Mr. *Burnham's* Report to the N. Y. Senate, Feb. 24, 1847. Mr. *Whittlesey's* Rep. in Rochester Democrat, April, 1845. U. S. Patents Rep. for 1843, p. 227.

banked up, ten or twelve feet wide on one side, and two or three on the other, and made flush with the planks at their ends, but thence sloping outwards, so as to carry off the water. Perfect drainage is all-important. To prevent a rut being formed by the wheels at the junction of the plank and earth roads, the ends of the plank must not be laid even, but a part of them should project two or three inches beyond the general line. This will facilitate the getting on the road, as the wheels of loaded wagons, instead of scraping by the side of the plank road, will at once, on meeting these projecting ends, rise upon them. If the bed on which the planks are to be laid is a new embankment, it should be travelled over for one season before they are laid upon it.

One track, with the supplementary earth road, will be entirely sufficient, except for an extraordinary amount of travel. If the tonnage be chiefly in one direction, as in the approach to a town from an agricultural district, the track should be laid on that side of the road which will enable the loaded teams to keep it, and will compel the unloaded ones to do all the turning out.

If the travel be so great as to require, and therefore to make profitable, the construction of a double track, it may be formed of two tracks, each eight feet wide, or of one track sixteen feet wide. The former plan is preferred. For the long plank three or five longitudinal sills are recommended, each to be four by six inches, and laid edgewise, being imbedded in trenches six inches deep. They should be from 15 to 20 feet long. They must not be of larger scantling, or they will not settle, and the earth will shrink away from the plank. There is considerable advantage in keeping the road dry by giving the road-bed a slight convexity of two or three inches in the centre, and springing the plank down to the outside sills,

to which they must then be attached by half-inch spikes, three inches long.

The duration of plank roads is from eight to twelve years. It is regulated by their decay from rot, and not by their surface wear, which is very small. The sand which is spread upon them protects the wood from the corks of the horses' shoes (which cause most of the wear) and soon penetrates the grain of the plank, till, with the woody fibres and the deposites on the road, a tough elastic covering is formed, which almost entirely protects the plank from wear. One half the wear and tear of seven years occurs in the first year. The tolls on them should be made light enough to encourage such an amount of travel as will promote their wearing out rather than rotting. The thickness of the plank should be proportioned to the travel.

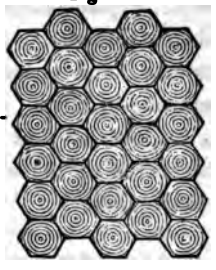
The cost of a plank road will necessarily vary greatly with every locality. For one mile of a single track, 8 feet wide and 3 inches thick, $8 \times 3 \times 5280 = 126{,}720$ feet, board measure, are required. Two sills, 4×4, would add $\frac{2 \times 4 \times 4 \times 5280}{12} = 14080$ feet, making in all 140,800 feet, and costing, at $5 per M., $704. The laying and grading will cost from 30 cents to $1 per rod, or from $96 to $320 per mile. Earthwork, sluices, bridges, and contingencies, admit of no average estimate. Without them, and adding $100 per mile for engineering superintendence, and $100 for gate-houses, the total cost per mile would be from $1000 to $1224. A road 8 feet wide, 4 inches thick, with 3 sills 5 inches square, and running from Rome to Oswego, (where hemlock planks are worth $3.50 to $4 per M.) is estimated to cost, for 60 miles, $75,000, or $1250 dollars per mile. Being laid on an old turnpike road, but little grading will be necessary.

Upon such roads great speed can be attained with little resistance to draught. Stage proprietors think them less fatiguing to horses than McAdam roads at the same rate of speed; and such a road has even been taken up for eight feet in width, to make room for a plank track. The motion of a carriage upon the plank is said to resemble that on a road of well-beaten snow.

Only one plank road has as yet been built in the state of New York, that from Salina to Brewerton, but a number are in progress. "The land over which this road runs is generally a low, rich, heavy clay soil, level, or nearly so, for most of the distance, rendering it a very difficult and expensive matter to keep an ordinary road over it in repair for any length of time. Its maintenance had become an oppressive burden on the people, while its importance and consequent wear was daily increasing. Under such circumstances the plank road was laid down on it, and meets the anticipations of its most sanguine advocates. The loads carried over it have averaged at least double the usual weight carried on the old road; and the value and price of lands contiguous to the road have been enhanced by its operation."*

WOODEN PAVEMENTS.

Fig. 116.



Pavements formed of wooden blocks, usually hexagonal in shape, possess many advantages. They cause little resistance to draught; are almost entirely free from noise; are easily kept clean; are easy to a horse's hoof; lessen very much the wear and tear of vehicles; are pleasant to travel-

* For another method of constructing roads of wood, see "Wooden track-ways," a few pages in advance.

lers; admit of great speed, and are cheaper in their first cost than granite blocks.

To counterbalance these recommendations, they are slippery and therefore dangerous in wet weather; and are very perishable, both from wear and from decay. The slipperiness has been obviated by grooving and striating their surface, but this lessens their ease of draught and noiselessness, and increases their cost.* The rapidity of their wear may be lessened by setting them on a foundation of broken stone, or of concrete, so shaped as to rapidly drain the water from their bottoms; and by covering their surfaces with a mixture of boiling tar and clean gravel. Their decay may be prevented by various chemical preservatives, of which the principal are, Kyan's, who saturates the wood with a solution of bichloride of mercury or corrosive sublimate (one pound to five gallons of water); Burnett's, who uses a solution of chloride of zinc, (one pound to ten gallons of water) absorbed in a vacuum; Renwick's, with coal tar; and Boucherie's, with the impure pyrolignite of iron, absorbed by the vital action of the sap vessels. All of these are effective, but expensive. Another recent invention proposes to mineralize the wood, by forming within it an artificial stone. The wood is placed in an iron cylinder, from which the air is then exhausted. A solution of the sulphate of iron is injected and absorbed by the wood. It is followed by muriate of lime. A chemical decomposition ensues, and a sulphate of lime, or artificial gypsum, is formed within the pores of the wood, which thus becomes hard and indestructible.

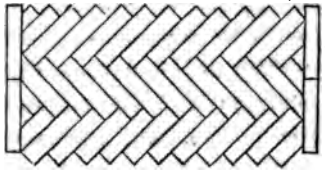
* A description of various forms proposed for wooden pavements may be found in the N. Y. American Repository, vol. iii.; and in London Mechanics' Magazine, and Repertory of Patent Inventions, *passim*.

6. ROADS OF OTHER MATERIALS.

BRICK.

Roads are made in Holland of hard burnt bricks, or "clinkers," laid on a firm foundation, and set on edge, with their longest dimension across the road. A better bond would be obtained by such an arrangement as is shown in the figure. But the pressure of heavy loads and the blows of horses' feet are too powerful for bricks, which should therefore be reserved for foot-pavements only.

Fig. 117.



CONCRETE.

Roads of concrete, or *béton*, six to eight inches thick, (such as has been described as the best foundation for granite blocks) have been warmly advocated in France, particularly for the use of steam carriages, in the place of the more costly, though more perfect railroads. Concrete will sustain great weights, carried on wheels, with little injury, but has been found (on the towpath of a canal aqueduct) to be rapidly destroyed by the feet of horses.

CAST IRON.

This material has been tried several times, but abandoned in consequence of its wearing so smooth as to cause horses to slip.

ASPHALTUM.

This name has been given to a bituminous mastic, of which the principal localities are Seyssel in France, and Val-de-travers in Switzerland. A limestone is also there found, which contains from 3 to 15 per cent. of bitumen. The stone is broken into fragments of the size of an egg, and ground to powder. A certain proportion, usually from 6 to 10 per cent., of mineral tar (obtained by boiling in water the bituminous sandstone of the same place) is combined with the limestone, by heating the former in iron boilers, and gradually adding and stirring in the powdered stone. In this state it is poured upon a level surface, and forms smooth cakes, over which gravel is spread. It is too weak for carriage-ways, and in this climate too soft in summer, and too brittle in winter, for even foot-pavements; but in Paris the asphaltum side-walks of the Boulevards are most perfect specimens of pavements. The asphaltum is melted on the spot in large caldrons, and poured within a moveable frame to the desired thickness. The edges of these slabs are united with the same material, and the pavement before an entire block of houses is thus made one smooth level surface, unbroken by a single joint.

CAOUTCHOUC.

A pavement, formed by mixing gravel with melted caoutchouc, or gum elastic, has been tried in London. A specimen in the court-yard of the Admiralty, in 1844, was very pleasant to walk upon, but showed permanent depressions where heavily loaded vehicles had passed over it.

7. ROADS WITH TRACKWAYS.

When wheeled carriages are drawn by horses, the wheels should move on the smoothest and hardest surface possible, while the horses require one rough enough to give them a secure foothold, and soft enough to be easy to their feet. These two opposite requirements are united only in *Roads with Trackways*, on which two parallel tracks of suitable materials are provided to receive the wheels, while the space between the tracks is filled with a different material, on which the horses travel. The wheel-tracks are usually of stone, of wood, or of iron.

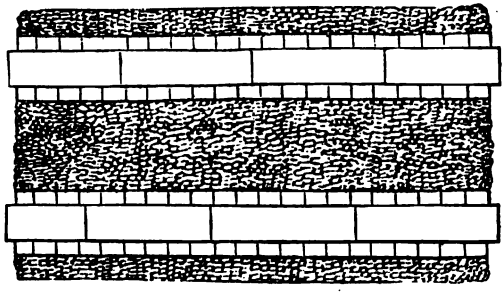
STONE TRACKWAYS.

The Egyptians seem to have first discovered the value of stone trackways in moving great weights, for traces of such contrivances have been found in the quarries which supplied the enormous stones of their Pyramids. In modern times they reappeared in the streets of Pisa, and are now general in those of Milan. They have of late years been used with great advantage in London, upon a road over which 250,000 tons annually passed, in wagons carrying each five tons. The repairs of this road for thirteen years cost less than one hundred dollars. The friction upon this stone trackway was so much reduced (being only $\frac{1}{114}$ of the weight) that a small horse (weighing $4\frac{1}{2}$ cwt.) could draw on a level 15 tons; and a powerful horse (weighing 14 cwt.) $30\frac{1}{2}$ tons, at the rate of 4 miles per hour. On this road the tracks were blocks of granite, 5 or 6 feet long, 16 inches wide, and 12 inches deep. The space between them was paved.*

* Parnell, p. 106

A similar trackway of stone has been used with great advantage to facilitate the ascent of a steep hill, as a substitute for reducing the inclination. Upon the Holyhead road, two hills, each a mile in length, had an inclination of 1 in 20. To reduce this to 1 in 24 would have cost $100,000. Nearly the same advantage, in diminishing the tractive force required, was obtained by moderate cutting and embankment, and making stone trackways, at a total expense of less than half the former amount. To draw one ton over the original hills required a power of 294 lbs.; to draw it over the trackways laid on the same inclinations required only 132 lbs.; so that the tractive force was reduced more than one-half by this improvement; and the effect was the same as if the hill had been cut down to a level, its surface remaining unchanged. The arrangement of this trackway is shown in Fig. 118.

Fig. 118.



The blocks were of granite, twelve inches deep, fourteen inches wide, and not less than four feet long. A foundation for them was prepared by making an excavation, 8 feet wide and 25 inches deep. On its levelled bottom was laid a rough pavement (like that described for the "Telford road," page 210) eight inches deep. The joints were also filled with gravel. Upon this pavement were laid three inches of broken stones, none exceeding one and a half inches in their longest

dimensions. On them was a layer of two inches of the best gravel, over which a heavy roller was passed. Upon this the stone blocks or "trams" were laid to a very accurate level. The spaces between and outside of them were filled up to a depth of six inches with broken limestone. On each side of the blocks was placed a row of paving-stones of granite, six inches deep, five inches wide, and nine inches long. The remaining space was filled up with hard broken stone, and the whole covered with a top dressing of an inch of good gravel.*

WOODEN TRACKWAYS.

In districts where timber abounds, it may be substituted for stone in forming tracks, on which the wheels of ordinary vehicles may run. Projections on the sides of the tracks may be employed to retain the wheels upon them, but the moisture retained in the joints would cause rapid decay, and if any such precaution be thought necessary, a furrow or gutter in one of the tracks would be preferable.† It would of course be necessary in this case, that the road should everywhere have sufficient inclination to carry off the water, which would otherwise fill the furrow.

Fig. 119.



The road-bed should first be properly shaped, with an inclination each way from the centre, and the timbers be completely imbedded in it. Two tracks should be laid, for the travel in the two directions. A faster vehicle, overtaking a slower one, could easily leave the track and

* Parnell, p. 109.

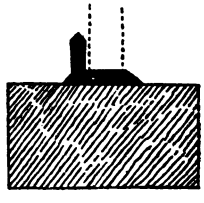
† See report of Mr. Jno. S. Williams, American Mechanics' Magazine, p. 210.

re-enter it after passing. The outside timber of each track should be smooth on its upper surface, and the inner one have hollowed in it a furrow, about 8 inches deep, 4 inches wide at bottom, and twice that at top. The flat timber should be wide enough to allow for the usual variation in the widths of vehicles. The rise of the road between the two timbers should just equal the depth of the furrow, so that the two wheels may be on the same level. The distance between the centres of the timbers should be about 5 feet; between the two tracks a space of four feet should be left; and on the outside of each, nine and a half feet for a summer road, making a total width of 33 feet, or two rods. The timber would be tolerably durable, being surrounded with earth on three sides; and might be rendered more so by any of the preservatives mentioned on page 234, particularly the last.

IRON TRACKWAYS.

The wooden tracks, adopted more than two centuries ago in the coal-mines of England, were before long covered with thin plates of iron to increase their durability and to lessen their friction, and subsequently replaced by tracks entirely of iron. While a flange on their sides was used to keep carriages upon them, they were "tramroads," but when the flange was transferred from the road to the wheel, the trackway became a RAILWAY. The extent of this topic demands for it a separate chapter.

Fig. 120.



CHAPTER V.

RAIL-ROADS.

"Nothing can do more harm to the adoption of railroads, than the promulgation of such *nonsense* as that we shall see locomotive engines travelling at the rate of 12, 16, 18, and 20 miles per hour!"

WOOD, on Railroads, 1825.

"An express train on the Great Western Railway, drawing 59 tons, has travelled, for three hours, at the rate of 63 miles per hour!"

RITCHIE, on Railways, 1846.

THE great success and rapid extension of railroads, are due to that appreciation of the value of time, which is the characteristic of the present age. The speed obtained upon them virtually and practically shortens distances in the precise ratio in which it abridges the time occupied in travelling over them.

The rapidity of motion and power of traction, which are attainable on railroads, depend on their diminution of friction. This is the chief element in the improvement of the surface of all roads, and in the preceding chapter we have considered, in the order of their progressive merits, the various means which may be employed for that object. In railroads we have arrived at their climax.

The essential attributes of a railroad are two smooth surfaces, usually of iron, for the wheels to run upon. These surfaces must be made as narrow as possible, to lessen their cost, and some contrivance to keep the wheels

upon them is then rendered necessary; the usual one at present being a projection, or "flange," on the inner rim of the wheel.

Since the peculiar wheels, which are the chief source of the superiority of railroads, prevent the vehicles which are adapted to run upon them, from being used on ordinary roads, railroads pass out of the practical scope of the present treatise; for the details of their construction no longer belong to the community at large, but demand the highest professional skill of the Civil Engineer. The general interest, however, in the subject of railroads seems to demand some explanation of the leading principles which should govern those engaged in their establishment, and some account of the ingenious contrivances which have been adopted to overcome the difficulties, which have, one after another, risen up in vain efforts to stop the progress of the giant. A brief popular view of these topics (without the minute practical details with which the subject of roads in general has been treated) will accordingly be given in the present chapter.*

Wooden railways were employed as a substitute for common roads, in the collieries of England, soon after the year 1600.† The earliest record of their existence is in the life of the Lord Keeper North, wherein it appears that about the year 1670, they were used at Newcastle-on-Tyne, for transporting coal from the mines to the river, and enabled one horse to draw four or five chaldrons.

* The principal authorities consulted have been *Lecount*, "Treatise on Railways," from the seventh edition of the Encyclopedia Britannica; *Ritchie*, "On Railways;" Professor *Vignoles'* Lectures; and the reports and discussions in the "Civil Engineer and Architect's Journal;" "Journal of the Franklin Institute;" "American Railroad Journal," &c.

† Ritchie on Railways, p. 19.

Subsequently these wooden rails were covered with plates of iron; but the introduction of rails wholly of iron seems not to have taken place till 1767.* A projection, or flange, on the outer side of the rails, kept the wheels of carriages upon them. They were then called "Tramroads." The objections to them were the broad surface of the plate, which collected obstructions upon it, and the great friction of the wheels against the side-flange.

In 1789, was constructed the first public railway in England, at Loughborough, by Mr. William Jessop, and he introduced cast iron edge-rails, and wheels with the flanges cast upon them instead of on the rail. "Tramroads" were, however, still in use in 1808.†

In 1803, malleable iron rails were first tried, but not approved of. In 1808, they were introduced into some coal works in Cumberland, and used with complete success.‡ Since that time they have become almost universal, and have been formed into a great variety of shapes, the best of which will be noticed in the section on "Construction." The progress from the use of horse power to locomotives of the present power and speed, will be included in the examination of "Motive powers."

In our condensed sketch of the extensive subject of Railroads, divisions and subdivisions, analogous to those of the previously examined topic of roads in general, will be employed, and thus the coincidences, and the differences, of the principles appropriate to each, will be made more prominent and striking.

The following is an outline of the proposed arrangement:

* Hornblower's Report to House of Commons in 1811.

† Ritchie, p. 22. ‡ R. Stevenson's Report, 1818.

I. What Railroads ought to be:
1. As to their direction.
2. As to their grades.
3. As to their cross-section.
II. Their Location.
III. Their Construction.
1. Forming their road-bed.
2. Their superstructure.
IV. Their Motive powers.
1. Horse power.
2. Stationary engines.
3. Locomotives.
4. Atmospheric pressure.

1. What railroads ought to be as to their direction.

Straightness of direction is much more important on railroads than on common roads, for two reasons; the economy of straightness, and the resistances and dangers of curves.

Economy of straightness.

From the great cost of the superstructure of a railroad, and the continually increasing expense of keeping it in repair, it is highly desirable that it should be as straight, and consequently as short, as possible.

As the earthwork of a railroad costs almost nothing for repairs, while those of its perishable superstructure are very great, and proportioned to its length, as is also the cost, in fuel, wages, and wear and tear of the engines, of running the road, it will often be advantageous to

make large expenditures for the former element of cost, in order to lessen the length of the road, and consequently the annual expenditures for the latter.*

Suppose the total cost of a railroad to be $30,000 per mile, the interest of which is $1800; the annual repairs of the superstructure $1000 per mile; and the expenses of engines also $1000 per mile. The total annual expense will then be $3800, which is the interest of $63,000, which sum might profitably be expended to shorten the road one mile, or $12 to shorten it one foot of length. If this single foot gained was the only result of a day's labor of a locating party, it would be a satisfactory equivalent for the expenses of such a day's work.

On these grounds, a *short* route, which has the faults of steep grades and curves of small radius, may profitably receive an outlay of capital upon it, for the purpose of lessening these defects, equivalent to the cost of the difference of distance between it and a *longer* line, which has better grades and curves.

From these considerations it is also seen that a line ought not to diverge from the direct course between its extremities, and thus increase its distance, for the sake of the trade of a small town, for whose benefit the time and fare of all the passengers and freight on the whole line would thus be taxed. It would be preferable to make a branch track to the town.

EVILS OF CURVES.

Curves are necessary evils on most routes, enabling them to pass around obstacles, such as projecting hills, deep hollows, houses too valuable to be removed, &c.

* See Amer. Railroad Journal, August, 1839, for an able development of this position, by W. B. Casey, C. E.

The greatest economy in curving is found when the line is located in a narrow and sinuous valley, with rocky banks, whose windings can be cheaply followed by suitably adjusted curves. When the line crosses a series of ridges transversely, and nearly at right angles to their general direction, there would be little economy in lateral deviation and curvature.

The *evils* of curves are the resistances which they offer to the motion of cars, and the dangers to which they expose them.

The following are the four principal causes of the resistances on curves:*

1. The obliquity of the direction of the moving power; *i. e.* the angle which the line of traction, drawn from the engine to each car, makes with the tangent to the curve at the middle of each car, in the direction of which the cars tend to move.

2. The pressure and consequent friction of the flanges of the wheels against the outer rail, due to the centrifugal force.

This is partially obviated by elevating the outer rail, as will be hereafter explained.

3. The pressure and consequent friction of the flanges, due to the parallelism of the axles; for the directions of the tangents at the points of contact of each pair of wheels are different, and therefore if one pair of wheels be perpendicular to its corresponding tangent, the other pair will be oblique to *its* tangent.

This resistance is partly remedied by allowing a "play" of an inch or less between the wheels and the rails. It diminishes as the axles are placed nearer to each other;

* Report of E. F. Johnson, C. E., 1842.

CHAPTER V.

RAIL-ROADS.

"Nothing can do more harm to the adoption of railroads, than the promulgation of such *nonsense* as that we shall see locomotive engines travelling at the rate of 12, 16, 18, and 20 miles per hour!"

WOOD, on Railroads, 1825.

"An express train on the Great Western Railway, drawing 59 tons, has travelled, for three hours, at the rate of 63 miles per hour!"

RITCHIE, on Railways, 1846.

THE great success and rapid extension of railroads, are due to that appreciation of the value of time, which is the characteristic of the present age. The speed obtained upon them virtually and practically shortens distances in the precise ratio in which it abridges the time occupied in travelling over them.

The rapidity of motion and power of traction, which are attainable on railroads, depend on their diminution of friction. This is the chief element in the improvement of the surface of all roads, and in the preceding chapter we have considered, in the order of their progressive merits, the various means which may be employed for that object. In railroads we have arrived at their climax.

The essential attributes of a railroad are two smooth surfaces, usually of iron, for the wheels to run upon. These surfaces must be made as narrow as possible, to lessen their cost, and some contrivance to keep the wheels

upon them is then rendered necessary; the usual one at present being a projection, or "flange," on the inner rim of the wheel.

Since the peculiar wheels, which are the chief source of the superiority of railroads, prevent the vehicles which are adapted to run upon them, from being used on ordinary roads, railroads pass out of the practical scope of the present treatise; for the details of their construction no longer belong to the community at large, but demand the highest professional skill of the Civil Engineer. The general interest, however, in the subject of railroads seems to demand some explanation of the leading principles which should govern those engaged in their establishment, and some account of the ingenious contrivances which have been adopted to overcome the difficulties, which have, one after another, risen up in vain efforts to stop the progress of the giant. A brief popular view of these topics (without the minute practical details with which the subject of roads in general has been treated) will accordingly be given in the present chapter.*

Wooden railways were employed as a substitute for common roads, in the collieries of England, soon after the year 1600.† The earliest record of their existence is in the life of the Lord Keeper North, wherein it appears that about the year 1670, they were used at Newcastle-on-Tyne, for transporting coal from the mines to the river, and enabled one horse to draw four or five chaldrons.

* The principal authorities consulted have been *Lecount*, "Treatise on Railways," from the seventh edition of the Encyclopedia Britannica; *Ritchie*, "On Railways;" Professor *Vignoles'* Lectures; and the reports and discussions in the "Civil Engineer and Architect's Journal;" "Journal of the Franklin Institute;" "American Railroad Journal," &c.

† Ritchie on Railways, p. 19.

Subsequently these wooden rails were covered with plates of iron; but the introduction of rails wholly of iron seems not to have taken place till 1767.* A projection, or flange, on the outer side of the rails, kept the wheels of carriages upon them. They were then called "Tramroads." The objections to them were the broad surface of the plate, which collected obstructions upon it, and the great friction of the wheels against the side-flange.

In 1789, was constructed the first public railway in England, at Loughborough, by Mr. William Jessop, and he introduced cast iron edge-rails, and wheels with the flanges cast upon them instead of on the rail. "Tramroads" were, however, still in use in 1808.†

In 1803, malleable iron rails were first tried, but not approved of. In 1808, they were introduced into some coal works in Cumberland, and used with complete success.‡ Since that time they have become almost universal, and have been formed into a great variety of shapes, the best of which will be noticed in the section on "Construction." The progress from the use of horse power to locomotives of the present power and speed, will be included in the examination of "Motive powers."

In our condensed sketch of the extensive subject of Railroads, divisions and subdivisions, analogous to those of the previously examined topic of roads in general, will be employed, and thus the coincidences, and the differences, of the principles appropriate to each, will be made more prominent and striking.

The following is an outline of the proposed arrangement:

* Hornblower's Report to House of Commons in 1811.

† Ritchie, p. 22.

‡ R. Stevenson's Report, 1818.

I. What Railroads ought to be:
 1. as to their direction.
 2. as to their grades.
 3. as to their cross-section.

II. Their Location.

III. Their Construction.
 1. forming their road-bed.
 2. their superstructure.

IV. Their Motive powers.
 1. horse power.
 2. stationary engines.
 3. locomotives.
 4. atmospheric pressure.

1. What railroads ought to be as to their direction.

Straightness of direction is much more important on railroads than on common roads, for two reasons; the economy of straightness, and the resistances and dangers of curves.

Economy of straightness.

From the great cost of the superstructure of a railroad, and the continually increasing expense of keeping it in repair, it is highly desirable that it should be as straight, and consequently as short, as possible.

As the earthwork of a railroad costs almost nothing for repairs, while those of its perishable superstructure are very great, and proportioned to its length, as is also the cost, in fuel, wages, and wear and tear of the engines, of running the road, it will often be advantageous to

make large expenditures for the former element of cost, in order to lessen the length of the road, and consequently the annual expenditures for the latter.*

Suppose the total cost of a railroad to be $30,000 per mile, the interest of which is $1800; the annual repairs of the superstructure $1000 per mile; and the expenses of engines also $1000 per mile. The total annual expense will then be $3800, which is the interest of $63,000, which sum might profitably be expended to shorten the road one mile, or $12 to shorten it one foot of length. If this single foot gained was the only result of a day's labor of a locating party, it would be a satisfactory equivalent for the expenses of such a day's work.

On these grounds, a *short* route, which has the faults of steep grades and curves of small radius, may profitably receive an outlay of capital upon it, for the purpose of lessening these defects, equivalent to the cost of the difference of distance between it and a *longer* line, which has better grades and curves.

From these considerations it is also seen that a line ought not to diverge from the direct course between its extremities, and thus increase its distance, for the sake of the trade of a small town, for whose benefit the time and fare of all the passengers and freight on the whole line would thus be taxed. It would be preferable to make a branch track to the town.

EVILS OF CURVES.

Curves are necessary evils on most routes, enabling them to pass around obstacles, such as projecting hills, deep hollows, houses too valuable to be removed, &c.

* See Amer. Railroad Journal, August, 1839, for an able development of this position, by W. B. Casey, C. E.

The greatest economy in curving is found when the line is located in a narrow and sinuous valley, with rocky banks, whose windings can be cheaply followed by suitably adjusted curves. When the line crosses a series of ridges transversely, and nearly at right angles to their general direction, there would be little economy in lateral deviation and curvature.

The *evils* of curves are the resistances which they offer to the motion of cars, and the dangers to which they expose them.

The following are the four principal causes of the resistances on curves:*

1. The obliquity of the direction of the moving power; *i. e.* the angle which the line of traction, drawn from the engine to each car, makes with the tangent to the curve at the middle of each car, in the direction of which the cars tend to move.

2. The pressure and consequent friction of the flanges of the wheels against the outer rail, due to the centrifugal force.

This is partially obviated by elevating the outer rail, as will be hereafter explained.

3. The pressure and consequent friction of the flanges, due to the parallelism of the axles; for the directions of the tangents at the points of contact of each pair of wheels are different, and therefore if one pair of wheels be perpendicular to its corresponding tangent, the other pair will be oblique to *its* tangent.

This resistance is partly remedied by allowing a "play" of an inch or less between the wheels and the rails. It diminishes as the axles are placed nearer to each other;

* Report of E. F. Johnson, C. E., 1842.

and is therefore much lessened by supporting the cars on two trucks, each resting on four wheels, the two axles of which are very near to each other.

4. The fastening of each pair of wheels to the same axle, with which they turn.* The wheel on the outer side of a curve must revolve farther, and therefore faster, than the inner one, which must slide (if both are of the same diameter) by an amount equal to the difference between the lengths of the inner and outer rails of the curve.

To lessen this resistance, the wheels are made conical, with their inner diameters greater than the outer, so that on curves, the outer wheels run on their greater diameter and the inner ones on the less. This cone may be so adjusted, that the wheel can run in a circle of 595 feet diameter without the flanges touching the rail. It is usually 1 in 7.

The resistance of a curve, of even a mile in radius, at a speed of 25 miles per hour, would equal that of an ascending grade of 9½ feet per mile

That of a curve of half a mile radius = a grade of 19 feet.
" " 1000 feet " = " 55 "
" " 700 " " = " 77 "

When a curve occurs on a slope, the grade should be flattened at that place, so as to avoid the double resistance which would otherwise there oppose the ascent of the cars.

The *danger* of running off the track is much increased by curves, even of large radius, especially at high ve-

* If they turned on the axle, as in ordinary carriages, they would not have sufficient steadiness to run truly at high velocities.—LECOUNT, p. 134.

locities. The momentum of the cars impels them onward in a straight line, and they are kept within the rails only by the flanges of the wheels and the firmness of the outer rail, the resistance of which gradually makes them follow the curvature of the road. If the momentum should exceed the resisting force, the cars must obey the former and leave the track. Curves at the foot of inclinations are therefore especially objectionable, since the cars will come upon them with excessive velocity. The rocking and twisting motion thus given to the cars indicates the dangerous tendency which they thus acquire.

The increased velocities of the more recent railroads have greatly lessened the permissible smallness of the radii of curves. For the usual speeds employed on the English railways, it is recommended,* that the minimum radius should be one mile. On the Baltimore and Ohio railroad, however, one of the earliest in the United States, there are several curves of 400 feet radius, ($14\frac{1}{4}°$) and one of 318 feet, (18°) over which locomotives pass without difficulty at a speed of 15 miles per hour.

The minimum in France, allowed by "*L'Administration des Ponts et Chaussées*," is 2700 feet; or about 2°.

It is recommended by an experienced American engineer, (John Childe) that for a speed of 33 miles per hour, (including stoppages) no curve should have a less radius than 1800 feet.

* Ritchie, p. 154.

2. WHAT RAILROADS OUGHT TO BE AS TO THEIR GRADES.

The question of the steepest grade admissible on a railroad is not one of practicability, as is often supposed, but only one of comparative economy. Locomotive engines can be made to ascend grades of almost unlimited steepness, by a proportionate increase of their power and adhesion, but their ascent becomes less and less useful in proportion as the grades become more and more steep. On an ascent of 19 feet to the mile, an engine can draw only about one-half its load on a level; at 38 feet to the mile, only one-third; and so on.

The precise ratio between the power of an engine on an inclination and on a level, is dependent on that resistance to the motion of the cars on a level which arises from friction. This is usually taken at 8lbs. to a gross ton, or 1 in 280; *i. e.* it is assumed that a weight of one pound, suspended from a cord passing over a pulley, and allowed to descend by its own gravity, would draw on a railroad a car, attached to the other end of the cord, and weighing 280lbs. If the railroad rises 1 in 280, or 19 feet to the mile, an additional force of one pound will be required to draw the car up this ascent;* *i. e.* double the former force will be necessary; so that the power required to draw a load one mile on such an ascent, could draw it two miles on a level.† At about 38 feet to

* See the demonstration on page 32.

† The customary ratio of the power to the weight moved on railroads, at slow rates of speed, is as 1 to 280, or 8lbs. to the gross ton; but Prof. Vignoles thinks that 1 to 200, or 11lbs. to the ton, would be fairer; while a writer in the Westminster Review, thinks the resistance of friction may be diminished by improvements in the axles, &c. to 1 in

the mile, triple the former power would be required, and so on.

The cost of draught on a railroad is nearly as the power employed, so that it will cost nearly twice as much to carry a load on a railroad with an ascending grade of 19 feet to the mile, as to carry it on a level route. This consideration will therefore justify large expenditures upon the excavations, embankments, &c., of a railroad, with a view of reducing its grades. The propriety of such expenditures is to be determined by comparing the annual interest of the amount with the annual saving of power ever after, in drawing the expected loads over the flattened road.*

But, on the other hand, this principle may be carried to excess. These great expenses for graduation should be incurred only when maximum loads are to be constantly carried at high speeds, as on important leading lines of great traffic. Much steeper grades, than would be otherwise allowable, may be adopted on roads on which maximum loads are not often carried, and on which the trains are required for public convenience to go often, and will therefore generally go light. The engine may be able to draw 400 tons on a level, and may seldom have more than 100 to draw. In such cases the true economy is,

500, or 4½lbs. to the ton. Dr. Lardner's experiments seem to make it, at 30 miles per hour, including the resistance of the atmosphere, 1 to 95, or 23½lbs. per ton. The resistance to a passenger train of 30 tons, at a velocity of 60 miles per hour, has been variously stated at from 18 to 50lbs. per ton. The recent experiments made by J. Scott Russell in 1844, under the auspices of the British Association, make the resistance, at slow velocities, 8lbs. per ton; and at velocities of from 20 to 36 miles per hour, 19 to 22lbs. per ton.

* The principles of this comparison are the same as those employed on page 67, &c., substituting locomotive for horse power.

not to go to great expense in order to reduce the grades below such a degree of steepness as would permit the engines to draw up their usual small loads ; nor to attempt to make a very level road, on which the engines could do a great deal, but would have very little to do. The same reasoning applies to railroads between places furnishing but a moderate amount of travel, such as the thinly settled parts of this country. Should the travel subsequently greatly increase, in an unanticipated degree, more frequent light trains could be sent. The enormous expenditures sometimes made in such situations to make a perfect road, have been too great for the scanty travel to pay interest upon, and have discouraged the proper construction of such as would have been really profitable.

A great reduction of the first cost of a railroad may often be made, without much increasing its subsequent expenses ; inasmuch as the capital expended in the graduation of a road has averaged, in England, fifteen times the cost of the locomotive power ; and as the daily cost of transit, due to this last, is also very small. Locomotive power forms only about one-third of the whole working expenses of a road ; and only a part of this, say one-half, is likely to be affected by the grades ; so that there is only one-sixth of the whole working expenses, which can be saved by making a road theoretically perfect in grades ; a small consideration for the interest of the extra capital, unless the traffic is likely to be continued, regular, and very heavy.

In brief, first determine precisely what is wanted. If the best possible road would be justified by the importance of the traffic, make it as perfect (*i. e.* as straight, level, and unyielding) as possible, so that it can accomplish the greatest amount of labor in the least time and

with the smallest expenditure of power. If a cheap though inferior road will accommodate the traffic expected, let such a one be made.

In comparing two roads between the same points, one of which is level and the other has a summit, reached by an ascending grade, succeeded by a descending one, it must not be overlooked that there is a certain degree of compensating power in the descent. As to how much of the power lost in the ascent, is gained by the assistance of gravity in the descent, there is great difference of opinion. It was formerly supposed that on descents steeper than the angle of repose, 1 in 280, or 19 feet to the mile, the cars would be accelerated by the force of gravity, (which is just balanced by friction at that inclination) and that the brake would then need to be applied, so that beyond that limit no more assistance could be derived from gravity. But it has been found by recent experiments that the resistance of the air to the motion of cars is far greater, and increases with the speed much faster, than had been imagined. This resistance, therefore, opposes the accelerating tendency of gravity with a force increasing with the velocity, so that trains of cars may safely descend inclinations of 60 feet to the mile. On planes of 53 feet to the mile, trains have commenced the descent at a speed of 40 miles per hour, but instead of this velocity being increased, it was reduced to 30 miles per hour. Railroads may therefore be laid out with grades of nearly 60 feet to the mile, with little or no loss of power in the descent; and there is little practical loss of power in the ascent, if the loads are such as do not task the engines to their full power on the level portions of the road. In England it has been found that cheap lines with steep grades have not cost much more to

work them than some which had cost two to three hundred thousand dollars per mile. We may therefore conclude that Navier's maxim, that "The amount of power required to effect the transit of a line of railroad, depends entirely on the length of the line and the difference of level of its two extremities," is true, if none of the inclinations upon it exceeds 60 feet to the mile, and if the engine is not obliged to carry its maximum load on a level.

This principle of compensation on descents was carried to such excess a few years ago, that it was sanguinely recommended to make all railroads *undulating*, carefully avoiding all levels, and establishing a continual succession of ascents and descents. It was argued that the momentum which the cars acquired in descending one slope, would carry them up the next, just as a pendulum swings as far to the one side as to the other; and that having received an impelling force at one end of the road, they would reach the other end, down one of these slopes and up the next in turn, by the assistance of gravity alone. Volumes have been written in attack and defence of this theory; but the most fatal objection to it, even supposing the undulations all properly arranged, is, that the velocity which a train must have acquired when it had reached the foot of one slope, to be sufficient to carry it up the next, would be too great for safety, and that the irregularities of speed would be destructive to the cars and to the road.

3. WHAT RAILROADS OUGHT TO BE AS TO THEIR CROSS-SECTION.

The *width* of a railroad is the first element of its cross-section to be considered, and it depends upon the width between the inner sides of the rails, which is called its "*Gauge.*"

THE BROAD AND NARROW GAUGE QUESTION.

The customary gauge is 4 feet 8½ inches; varying from 4"8 to 4"9, according to the space deemed necessary for the play of the flanges of the wheels. This is called the "narrow gauge." The "broad gauge," first introduced by Mr. Brunel, on the Great Western Railway in England, is 7 feet. Between these two gauges is still going on the fiercest contest of the many which have arisen on the various doubtful points in the construction of railroads.*

The original railroads were made of the same width as the tram-roads, on which ran common wagons. This width happened to be 4 feet 8½ inches. The new railroads adopted the same width, for the convenience of using upon them the same cars, and thus this width became almost universal. Our American roads, using at first English engines, were necessarily formed with an identical gauge. In a few cases exceptional gauges have been adopted. Six feet 2 inches, and also 5 feet 6 inches, have been employed in Ireland. The New York and Erie Railroad has a gauge of 6 feet; and the Charleston and Augusta Railroad has one of 5 feet. But the great controversy is between the partisans of the 4 feet 8½ inches, and the 7 feet gauges.

* Able reports on the subject have been made by E. F. Johnson, C. E., and by a committee appointed by the British Government.

ADVANTAGES OF THE BROAD GAUGE.

The track being wider, the cars have a broader base; so that if the frost, or any other cause, raises or lowers one side of the road a certain amount, say one inch, it will cause an angular inclination of only 1 in 84 on the wide track, but 1 in 56½ on the narrow one.

The breadth of base being greater, the centre of gravity, with equal loads, is lower; so that there is less danger of the cars running off the track. They have also less lateral motion and greater steadiness, and thus add much to the comfort of the traveller. This steadiness may also be increased by placing the wheels outside of the cars.

The broader base permits the wheels of the cars to be proportionally increased in size, and thus is obtained greater leverage for overcoming the friction at the axles.

Instead of letting the cars remain of the same width as now, in order to increase the steadiness, their width may be increased to correspond with that of the track, (making it 10 or 11 feet instead of the present 8 or 9) and then they will be as steady as at present, but be much more commodious for passengers, (giving space to sleep and eat) and more convenient for packing bulky freight, as hay, cotton, lumber, barrels, cattle on the hoof, &c.

The preceding are the advantages belonging to the *cars;* those gained by the *engines* are still greater.

The narrow track does not give width enough to make sufficiently large, and to arrange to the greatest advantage, the various parts of the engine. With their usual construction, the highest profitable speed for maximum loads (at the average working pressure of steam) is about 10 miles per hour. To carry the same load at twice the speed, it would be necessary to double the quantity of

steam generated by the boiler, and therefore to double either its length or its diameter. The length of its flues cannot be advantageously increased; therefore the enlargement must be that of its breadth. To effect this, more space between the wheels is needed, and to get it, a wider track is required.

Even if it be not required to carry great loads at high speeds, the surface of the boiler, being larger, may be less intensely heated, and will therefore last longer.

As larger driving wheels may be used on the wide track, their adoption will enable greater speed to be attained without increasing the rate of motion of the piston. The expansive force of steam may therefore be employed.

The larger and more powerful engines will do more work, with no more men, than smaller ones. In them there is therefore the same economy as in large ships.

OBJECTIONS TO THE BROAD GAUGE.

More ground is required; and the excavations and embankments are wider, and therefore more expensive.

The axles must be heavier to have the same strength as before.

There is an increased resistance on the curves, in consequence of the increased sliding of the inner wheels, which is equal (as was seen on page 247) to the difference between the lengths of the outer and inner rails, and therefore proportional to the difference of the respective radii of the curves.

The larger engines of the broad gauge roads have more power than is generally needed, and therefore part of it is practically wasted.

But on the whole, for a great road, the advantages of the broad gauge would indisputably overpower the objec-

tions to it, if it were not for the evils of "The break of gauge."

THE BREAK OF GAUGE.

This is the name given to the interruption which occurs whenever a road of broad gauge meets one of narrow gauge, and which renders necessary the change of passengers, baggage, and freight, from one set of cars to another, and prevents the same cars being run through without transhipment, or "breaking bulk." Passengers thus suffer much delay, confusion, and discomfort; and merchandise is exposed to damage and risk of loss, in being thus changed from one car to another midway in its route, besides incurring much unnecessary expense. The speedy conveyance of troops is also an important consideration; for railroads are one of the most powerful means of national defence, enabling an army to be concentrated rapidly at any point attacked; but their value for this purpose would be greatly lessened if it were necessary, at some "break of gauge" on the route, to stop and lose the time necessary for transferring the troops, with their artillery, stores, &c., from one set of cars to another.

Most roads belong to the narrow gauge class. In England the proportion is as 7 to 1; there being in operation, in 1846, 1901 miles of the narrow gauge, and only 274 of the broad. Every new road of broad gauge, connecting with a narrow one, therefore increases the evils of the break of gauge. The importance of lessening them has given rise to various contrivances for that purpose. The following are the four principal remedies proposed.

1. *Telescopic axles.* The axles have been so arranged that one portion slides in the other, like the joints of a

telescope, so that the distance between the wheels can be so adjusted as to suit either the broad or the narrow gauge. To lessen their gauge, the catch which fastens them is loosened, and the carriage is pushed along a pair of rails, the space between which gradually narrows from 7 feet to 4 feet 8½ inches, and thus the wheels of the carriage are gradually forced nearer to each other. To widen their gauge the operation is reversed. But, besides the expense of the alteration, there is a resulting unsteadiness, and consequent liability to danger.

2. *Low trucks* on the broad gauge roads may have rails laid on them 4 feet 8½ inches apart, upon which the narrow gauge cars may be run, and thus be carried on the broad roads. But this contrivance raises the centre of gravity, making the whole top-heavy; and adds so much extra dead-weight to the load. Besides, it does not provide for conveying the broad gauge cars on the narrow roads.

3. *Shifting car-bodies* for passengers have been provided, which could be swung, by powerful cranes, from one set of wheels to another; and *Moveable boxes*, to receive merchandise, have been made of such a size, that one should be carried on a narrow gauge track, and two on a broad one.

4. *Extra rails* have been laid, so that the same road could be used for both classes of cars; a pair of narrow gauge rails being laid within the broad ones, or only a single rail being laid, so as to be 4 feet 8½ inches from one of the broad gauge rails. But, besides the expense of these arrangements, there would be increased danger at the crossings.

All these remedies are imperfect; and the "break of gauge" seems to be an evil for which there is no cure, except in destroying its cause.

The Royal Commission, appointed by the British Parliament, in 1845, to investigate this subject, made an elaborate report in 1846, and sum up as follows:

"1. As regards the *safety, accommodation, and convenience* of the passengers, no decided preference is due to either gauge; but on the broad gauge the motion is generally more easy at high velocities.

"2. In respect of *speed*, we consider the advantages are with the broad gauge; but we think the public safety would be endangered in employing the greater capabilities of the broad gauge much beyond their present use, except on roads more consolidated, and more substantially and perfectly formed, than those of the existing lines.

"3. In the commercial case of *the transport of goods*, we believe the narrow gauge to possess the greater convenience, and to be the more suited to the general traffic of the country.

"4. The broad gauge involves *the greater outlay;* and we have not been able to discover, either in the maintenance of way, in the cost of locomotive power, or in the other annual expenses, any adequate reduction to compensate for the additional first cost."

They recommend "that the gauge of four feet eight inches and a half, be declared by the legislature to be the gauge to be used in all public railways now under construction, or hereafter to be constructed, in Great Britain." They add, that "great commercial convenience would be obtained by reducing the gauge of the present broad gauge lines to the narrow gauge;" and "think it desirable that some equitable means should be found of producing such entire uniformity of gauge, or of adopting such other course as would admit of the narrow gauge carriages

passing, without interruption or danger, along the broad gauge lines."

The final conclusion seems to be that, if all railroads were now to be constructed anew, a gauge of five and a half, or six feet, would be considered most desirable; but that the evils of a "break of gauge" are so great, in the present preponderance of narrow gauge roads, as to overbalance the disadvantages of the narrow gauge; which should therefore be adopted by all future railroads which are to connect with others.

WIDTH OF ROAD-BED.

When the gauge has been decided upon, the necessary width of the roadway can be determined. When the road has a double track, the middle space between the two pairs of rails, for convenience and safety, should not be less than six feet. The side-spaces, outside of the rails, should, for safety, be a little more than the width of the track, particularly on embankments; so that if the engine gets off the track, it may still remain upon the bank. This width also gives greater stability to the embankment and to the rails laid upon it, diminishing their liability to be disturbed by slips. These side-spaces are from 5 to 8 feet on different railways. They should be greatest on roads where great velocity is adopted; on high embankments; and on the outside of curves. They will of course be less in tunnels, viaducts, bridges, &c.

The total width of the road-bed of a railroad, with narrow gauge and double track, will therefore be $6 + 2\ (4\frac{3}{4}) + 2 \times 6 = 27\frac{1}{2}$ feet. In excavations, the widths of the ditches on each side must be added.

The New York and Albany Railroad is proposed to be 26 feet wide on embankments, and 34 feet in excavations.

The Massachusetts railroads are usually, for a single track, 15 feet wide on embankments, and 24 feet in excavations.

If it be proposed to lay only a single track at first, and subsequently to add a second one, the cuttings and fillings should always be made *at first* of the full width for a double track; for the extra expense of the additional width is but a small proportion of the whole, and a narrow cut or bank, is, from the want of room for the carts, &c. to pass, worked much more disadvantageously, and therefore much more expensively, than a wide one. If an embankment be subsequently widened, the new portion will not adhere to the side of the old one without forming the latter into steps; and in widening a rock excavation, a single blast might render the road impassable for many hours.*

The other subjects properly belonging to the "Cross-section," such as the elevation of the outer rail on a curve, &c., will be more advantageously examined under the head of "Superstructure."

* Gen. McNeill's Report on Mass. Western Railroad, 1836–7, pp. 39–44.

II. THE LOCATION OF RAILROADS.

The location of railroads is guided by the same principles as that of common roads, and made in similar manner; but the greater importance to railroads of straight lines and easy grades, as has been shown in the preceding section, justifies and requires a much greater expenditure in the surveys which seek the attainment of these, and in the excavations, embankments, and bridges by which they are secured. The minor undulations of the country are disregarded, for they can be readily overcome by the cuttings and fillings which will be demanded by any traffic which is important enough to need a railroad for its accommodation; and straightness is the first object: where a common road should go around a hill, a railroad should cut through it. For this reason, the compass, or some other angular instrument, usually takes the lead in the location, and is followed by the level. Upon the rough plot of the survey, *curves* are pencilled in, their centres and radii are determined, and then they are laid out on the ground, being corrected, if necessary, by calculation or by trial, till they pass through the desired points. The important calculations for excavation and embankment are identical with those of common roads; but the *estimate* must include the new items of superstructure, of engines, cars, &c., which are to be presently examined.

III. THE CONSTRUCTION OF RAILROADS.

The two principal divisions of this part of the subject are—"Forming the Road-bed," (which corresponds to the general "Construction" of common roads); and the "Superstructure," which includes the Rails, and their supports, ties, &c.

1. FORMING THE ROAD-BED.

EXCAVATIONS.

The *Excavations* on railroads are often of much greater depths than are ever necessary on common roads, the extra expense being amply repaid by the advantages of the easier grades and straighter lines thereby attained. There is an excavation (in sand) on one English railway, 110 feet deep; and on another, 16,000,000 cubic yards of material were removed. The thorough drainage of these excavations by ditches, cross-drains, &c., is of the highest importance. Their sides often need to be supported by retaining walls, in order to make steeper slopes possible, and thus to lessen their top width, when they pass through valuable ground. Sometimes these retaining walls are supported by iron beams, or flat arches, extending across the railway at a sufficient height to clear the engines. In one remarkable cutting, 60 feet deep, the upper portion of it was rock, but the lower looser matter. If the whole cutting had been extended upwards, with such side slopes as the looser and lower portion required, it would have been more than 200 feet wide at its top, and would have involved very great expense in the removal of so large an amount of rock. The sides of the cutting were therefore made nearly perpendicular, and the

loose strata at the bottom were supported by retaining walls, carried up till they reached the solid rock. Such are some of the ingenious expedients rendered necessary by the gigantic constructions of modern railroads.

TUNNELS.

The depth of an excavation frequently renders a *Tunnel* more economical. In constructing one, the centre line of the road must be set out with very great accuracy upon the surface of the ground, (by a Transit instrument) and "shafts" sunk at proper intervals along this line. The excavations are made by "headings," or "drifts," from shaft to shaft, and to the open ends of the tunnel. The material excavated is raised through these shafts, which, after the completion of the tunnel, serve as ventilators. Their distances apart should be from 500 to 1000 feet. If the material be earth, or stratified rock, the crown of the tunnel, and its sides, must be supported by a brick arch, and the excavation kept only a few feet in advance of the completed arch.

The height of tunnels, in the clear, varies on the English railways from 17 to 30 feet, and the width, for a double track, from 22 to 30 feet. The average sectional area in the clear, is 450 square feet: when an arch is required, the excavation would contain about 700 square feet. The cost per lineal foot of the English railway tunnels, has ranged from $30 to $150. If sufficient time had been allowed, they could generally have been executed for $60 per lineal foot. A number in England are over a mile in length, and one is more than a mile and three quarters. A gigantic one has been lately projected, which is to pass under the heart of London, reaching in one place a depth of a hundred feet beneath the surface of the ground.

EMBANKMENTS.

The embankments of railroads demand the use of every possible precaution to ensure their solidity; not only on account of their size, but because the vibrations imparted to them by the passing trains, greatly increase their tendency to slip. The expense and time required to form them in layers, as recommended on page 166, often forbid the adoption of that method. They are usually constructed by raising them to their full height at one end, and so carrying them onward. Temporary rails are laid along the bank, and extended with it, and on them wagons, containing each about 3 cubic yards, are drawn by horses, or by locomotive engines, if the distance, or "lead," be great.

It has been ascertained that, contrary to the usual theory and practice, the quantity of work which can be done on an embankment so made, and, consequently, the time which will be required for its completion, does not depend on the area of the face of the cutting which supplies it, or on the number of wagons which can be filled in it together; but on their rate of speed, and on the number of them which can be emptied in a given time over the head of the embankment, to the top width of which this element is proportional. The number of wagons drawn together in a "set," should increase or decrease with the length of the "lead," and the breadth of the end of the bank; and the number of "sets" should be increased at certain exact periods in the progress of the work, which are susceptible of mathematical determination.*

* These points are very clearly and fully examined in "Laws of Excavation and Embankment on Railways," London, 1840.

When a railroad passes through a wooded swamp, where no materials for embankment are at hand, a cheap and efficient substitute will be formed by a series of timber trusses. Piles of 15 inches diameter, not sharpened, are driven so as to form two lines, at a distance from each other equal to the width of the railroad. Transverse ties are fastened across their tops, which are braced by inclined struts, the lower ends of which abut against short piles. Longitudinal timbers are laid on the heads of the piles to carry the rails. Various combinations of the trusses are employed, according to the height of the superstructure above the surface of the ground. After the railroad has been thus constructed, it may be gradually banked up to the level of the rails, by taking advantage of its facilities of transportation, to bring earth from a distance to the places where it is needed.

The side-slopes of both the excavations and the embankments should be sown with grass seed, or sodded, as directed in the construction of roads. Some deep cuttings on the English railways, have been planted with flowers, shrubs, and trees; an improvement as delightful to the passenger and therefore profitable to the proprietors of the road, as it is beneficial to the permanence of the slopes.

BALLASTING.

The tops of the embankments, and the bottoms of the excavations, are brought to a height called the "Formation level," about two feet below the intended level of the rails, and there shaped with a fall from the middle to each side, as in common roads, in order to drain off the water which falls upon them. The remaining space of two

feet (more or less, according to circumstances) is filled up with "ballasting," composed of some porous material, such as broken stones, gravel, quarry rubbish, cinders, &c., through which the water of rains can readily pass. Upon this "ballast" are laid the supports of the rails. Without this precaution, the water absorbed by the earthy materials of the road-bed would render it soft and spongy in ordinary weather, and by freezing in winter would disturb the position and the levels of the rails. On many American railroads, the neglect of this safeguard against the effects of our Northern winters, renders them very unsafe at high velocities in the early spring, when the frost is coming out of the ground. Ships' ballast was first used for this purpose on the early railroad at Newcastle, and from this circumstance the substitutes have retained the original name.

BRIDGES AND VIADUCTS.

The *bridges* necessary on railroads, when of stone, present peculiar difficulties in their construction. This is owing to the frequently unavoidable *flatness* of the arches, (a characteristic which it is not easy to unite with sufficient strength, both in reality and in appearance) and to the *obliquity* with which they often cross other roads, and which compels the employment of "skew-arches," which require more than ordinary skill in both the engineer and the builder.

In this country timber bridges are the cheapest, and therefore almost universally employed, though faulty from their elasticity and consequent vibration. The leading plans are Col. Long's truss bridge, which has the advantage of using only timbers of small scantling, any of which

can be safely taken out and replaced; Town's Lattice bridge, which is formed of planks crossing each other diagonally, like lattice work, and is easily constructed, but, though strong, is deficient in stiffness; and Howe's truss bridge, in which an iron rod replaces the usual vertical posts.*

Cast iron has been very successfully used, six ribs or girders supporting the front rails and the parapet walls; a platform, without ballast, being laid on the girders.

Viaducts are substitutes for high embankments, and are usually composed of a series of arches. They are particularly valuable in passing through cities, to save the room which would be occupied by side-slopes. Thus the London and Greenwich railroad passes for four miles above the roofs of the houses, on a series of arches, of which there are 878, chiefly semicircular, each of 18 feet span, and 20 feet high. In similar cases, iron columns have been employed, forming a colonnade under which shops have been constructed.

* For an outline of these plans, see Mahan's Civil Engineering, pp. 173–4 and 243.

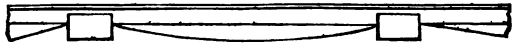
2. THE SUPERSTRUCTURE.

Under this head will be considered the best forms and weights of *rails*, whether supported at intervals (in chairs, on stone blocks or wooden cross-sleepers) or on continuous bearings for their whole length; and their proper arrangement, inclination, elevation, &c., when laid.

RAILS SUPPORTED AT INTERVALS.

When rails are supported only at intervals, on props, like a bridge on piers, they are liable to be depressed between these supports by the heavy loads which pass over them. It is therefore very important to give them such a shape as will secure the greatest strength with the least quantity of material. The form indicated by theory, and originally adopted in practice, is that called "fishbellied," from the rounded profile of its under side. A rail of such

Fig. 121.



a form, will have more power to resist deflection than a straight one of the same weight, in the proportion of 11 to 9.* But whatever the theoretical advantages of this form, its inconvenience in practice, owing to its requiring a higher support, which is therefore less steady, has caused it to be generally discarded.

The forms now used are all varieties of the *parallel* or *straight* rail, in which the top and bottom are parallel, and which has the same cross-section at all parts of

* Lecount, p. 110. Barlow doubts this.

its length. Usually the rail is thinner through its middle than at its top and base. The various forms are named the T rail, the H rail, the hour-glass rail, &c. from the shape of their cross-section. The popular division of rails is into the "Plate rail," and the "Edge rail;" the latter including all the varieties just mentioned.

The best form of the parallel rail was investigated by Professor Barlow, in behalf of the London and Birmingham Railway Company, and Fig. 122 shows the section of the rail which he found to possess the greatest strength with the least material, the bottom web being much smaller than the head.

Fig. 122.



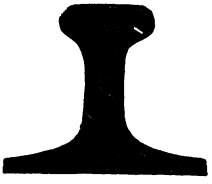
But a double headed, or H rail, as shown in Fig. 123, with its top and base of the same size and shape, is now generally preferred in England.* Professor Barlow considers this shape to be inferior in strength and convenience in fixing, its broader bearing to be of no advantage, and the proposed plan of turning it over, when the upper table is worn down, to be impracticable; but still it is found preferable in practice, as enabling the best side to be selected, as being more easily keyed in its chair, and as having a broader bearing.

Fig. 123.



A favorite form in this country, sometimes called the inverted T rail, is shown in Fig. 124. It has been employed on the Boston and Albany railroad, and many others.

Fig. 124.



* Ritchie, p. 49.

The *form* of the rail being decided upon, its *weight*, on which its strength depends, is next to be determined. The weight is expressed by the number of pounds in a lineal yard. Its *minimum* may be determined thus. A certain breadth is necessary for the bearing surface of the rail, that the wheel may run upon it without being grooved. $2\frac{1}{4}$ inches seems the minimum for this. The minimum breadth is desired, in order that as much as possible of the material may be put in the depth, the strength being as the simple breadth, but as the *square* of the depth. The minimum depth, to resist abrasion and exfoliation, is $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches. This gives a sectional area of $2\frac{1}{4} \times 1\frac{1}{4}$ inches $= 3.75$, or, say 4 inches, which corresponds to 36 lbs. to the yard. This is then the minimum weight permissible, when the rail is supported throughout its whole length; but if supported at intervals it must have much greater weight and strength, their degree depending on the distance between its points of support.

This distance has varied from 3 to 6 feet. It is now generally made less than 4 feet. For Professor Barlow's form of rail, Fig. 122, with a strength of 7 tons, the weight should be 51 lbs. per yard, for a bearing of 3 feet. To attain the same *strength* with a bearing of 6 feet, the weight should be 79 lbs. per yard. But the *deflection* of the rail with 3 tons, which in the former case is only .024 inch, in the latter is .082 inch. Thus the longer bearings, when equally *strong* with the shorter, are much less *stiff*, and therefore much inferior to them. The effect of any depression under a passing load is that the engine, at slow speeds, after sinking into it, has an inclined plane to ascend, and at high speeds it leaps over the hollow, and strikes with great violence upon the other side of it. A rail having been bent half an inch, and then covered with

paint, an engine with a train of cars was run over it, and none of the wheels touched the paint for a space of 22 inches.* Strength to resist deflection is therefore as important to a rail as its strength to bear weights. The latter should be double the mean strain or load. The former should not admit of a depression under a passing load of more than $\frac{3}{1\,0}$ of an inch.

The weight of rails has been yearly increasing. The first rails laid on the Liverpool and Manchester railway were only 35 lbs. to the yard; they have been successively replaced by rails weighing 50, 65, and 75 lbs. to the yard. The rail shown in Fig. 123 weighs 75 lbs. to the yard, with bearings 3 feet 9 inches apart. Its whole depth is 5 inches; the top and base are $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches; and the thickness of the middle rib is about $\frac{3}{4}$ of an inch. On the Massachusetts railroads the rails weigh from 56 to 60 lbs. per yard, and rest on cross-sleepers, 2 feet 6 inches apart; the weight on a driving wheel being from 5,000 to 8,000 lbs. On the New York and Albany Railroad it is proposed to adopt rails of 70 lbs. to the yard, supported on cross-sleepers 2 feet 7 inches from centre to centre. A double track of such rails would require nearly 250 tons of iron per mile.

The rails are usually rolled in lengths of from 12 to 20 feet. Their ends have received various shapes. Square or butt ends, Fig. 125, are generally preferred, but cause considerable shock to the wheel. The half-lap joints, Figs. 126 and 127, retain their positions better, but weaken the rail. The form shown in Fig. 128 is

Fig. 125.

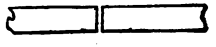


Fig. 126.



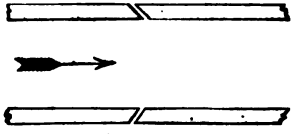
Fig. 127.



* Lecount, p. 89.

recommended when trains run on each track in only one direction, (as indicated by the arrow) so that they never meet the points of the rails.*

Fig. 128.



Between the ends of two successive lengths of rails, a space must be left to allow for their expansion by heat. The expansion of a fifteen feet rail may be taken at $\frac{1}{1\,2\,0}$ of an inch for each degree of Fahrenheit, or $\frac{1}{8}$ inch for 100°. If the rails were laid in the coldest weather, a space of one-eighth of an inch should therefore be left between their ends. The force with which iron expands is from 6 to 9 tons per square inch of section, which corresponds to 10 lbs. to the yard; so that the rail of 70 lbs. expands with a force of about fifty tons.

CHAIRS.

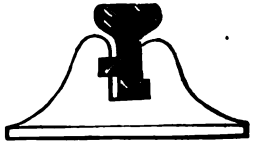
The rails are not fastened directly to their supports, but are inserted in "chairs," or pedestals, spiked to the blocks or cross-sleepers. The chairs are generally of cast iron, and weigh from 20 to 30 lbs. They are cast in one piece, consisting of a bottom plate, and two side pieces, between which the rail passes, its under surface being about an inch above the block. The opening of the chair must be as wide as the lower part of the rail, in order that it may be removed and replaced without disturbing the chair. Keys of wood, or of iron, must therefore be employed to fill up this opening, and to hold the rail firmly in the chair, but without offering any resistance to its longitudinal motion in expansion and contraction.

On the Liverpool and Manchester Railway the chair,

* Leconnt, p. 112.

shown in Fig. 129, was employed. The rail has on one side of its bottom a projecting rib which enters a notch in the chair, and another notch on the other side receives an iron pin. To prevent its getting loose, that end of the pin which enters first may be split, and opened when driven home.

Fig. 129.



Another good form, shown in Fig. 130, was invented by Mr. Robert Stephenson. In it the rail is confined by two bolts with angular ends, which enter a small score in the rail, and are keyed home by iron keys with split ends.

Fig. 130.

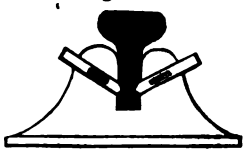
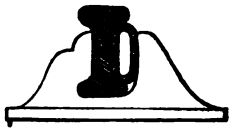


Fig. 131 represents Mr. Barlow's patent hollow iron key applied to fasten a double-headed parallel rail.

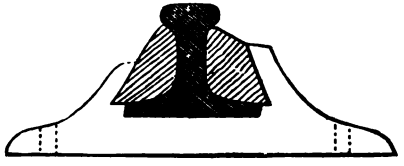
Fig. 131.



Wooden keys, of similar shape, but solid, have been much used, owing to the great facility which they offer of being tightened and replaced. They should be kiln-dried, cut, and compressed by hydraulic pressure, so that by their swelling, after being driven in, they may hold the rail very tightly.

A suitable chair for the inverted T rail, so much used in this country, is shown in Fig. 132. The rail is confined on both sides by wooden keys.

Fig 132.



Sometimes the chairs are placed only at the joinings

of the lengths of rails, which are fastened to the intermediate supports by spikes with bent heads.

When the supports are stone blocks, the chairs are attached to them by drilling holes in the stone, from $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 inches in diameter, and driving into them plugs of oak. The chairs being properly placed over these, iron spikes with heads are driven through the holes in the base of the chair into the wooden plugs. Between the chair and the stone, pieces of tarred felt are placed to diminish the concussion. When the supports are of wood, the chairs are nailed down with strong spikes.

STONE BLOCKS.

Stone blocks imbedded in the ballasting, have been till lately the principal supports employed on the English railways. They are usually blocks of granite, or whin stone, two feet square and one foot deep. The customary distances between their centres have been noticed on page 271. They are sometimes placed, as in Fig. 133, with their sides parallel to the line of the road; and sometimes diagonally, as in Fig. 134.

Fig. 133.

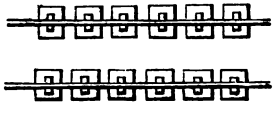
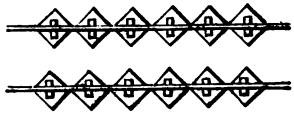


Fig. 134.



Both plans have their advocates. The former position offers more resistance to motion in the line of the road.* The latter is less stable, but is more convenient for packing the ballast around. Circular blocks have been pro-

* In the proportion of 1728 to 1629 For the investigation, see Lecount, p. 93.

posed in order to get equal resistance in all directions, but the gain would not equal the extra expense.

The blocks must be very carefully set precisely level, since even a quarter inch difference in 3 feet, would create an inclined plane of 1 in 144, or 37 feet to the mile.

On curves the blocks on each side of the road must be connected by iron tie-rods, that the exterior ones may not be pressed outward by the centrifugal force of the cars.

Stone blocks have been also laid transversely, with the advantage of preserving the gauge of the road, but with the evils of great rigidity, hardness, and jolting.

WOODEN CROSS-SLEEPERS.

Transverse or cross-sleepers of wood are now considered preferable to stone blocks for many reasons. They tie the rails together and preserve their parallelism, and also make the road less rigid and more elastic than the stone, and therefore much more smooth and pleasant to travellers. Thus the blacksmith puts his anvil on a block of wood to lessen the concussion. The only objection to them is their liability to decay, against which, however, there are many preservatives.

They are usually of chesnut, oak, pitch-pine, or red cedar. They may be round sticks, hewn on two sides, so as to leave at least six inches thickness, and more if possible. The longer they are the better, as the extra length on each side of the track lessens the danger of settling. On the Massachusetts roads they are of second growth chesnut, 7 feet long, and 8 inches by 12. They are simply laid on the ballasting, except on new embankments and soft ground, in which cases they are laid on longitudinal timbers or sub-sills, which may be of plank 8 inches wide and 3 or 4 thick.

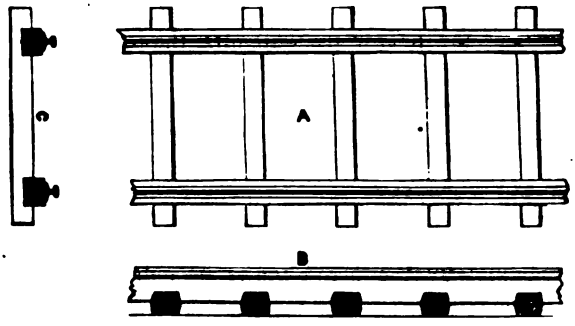
"Herron's Railroad track" is a horizontal lattice-work of timbers of small scantling, upon the intersections of which the rails rest.

CONTINUOUS SUPPORTS.

When rails are supported at intervals, the less the intervals and the nearer the supports, the less will be the yielding and deflection of the rails. Carrying out this principle, and continually lessening the intervals, we at last arrive at *continuous* supports. The advantages of such solid bearings for the rails would seem to admit of no dispute. It is evident that an iron bar, laid on a series of points, will be much more easily bent, either laterally or vertically, by the heavy blows or jolts of a carriage, than when the same bar is made to form a part of the solid roadway. The system of continuous supports of longitudinal timbers is therefore superior to any other in strength, solidity, and ease of motion. It has been of late increasing in popularity in England, in spite of the cost of timber in that country, while with us it has been abandoned on our best roads for the system of supports at intervals. This has probably arisen from the circumstance that most American roads with longitudinal timbers have been laid with plate rails, so thin that their ends sometimes spring up so as to form "snake-heads," and have thus received the scarcely caricatured description of "A hoop tacked to a lath." Such roads have the defects of instability, insecurity, inequality of surface, waste of power, resistance to speed, and great expense of maintenance. But these faults do not belong to the system itself, but to its imperfect execution. The rails should be heavy edge rails, of suitable form, and in contact with the timbers for their whole length; and the longitudinal timbers

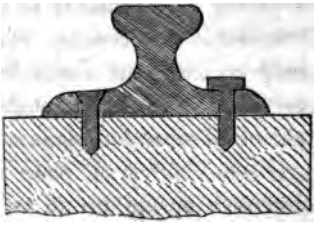
should be tied together by cross-sleepers. The best railroad in the world, the "Great Western," has such continuous bearings. The wood may be preserved from decay by any of the methods noticed on page 234.

Fig. 135.



In the above figure, A is the ground plan, B the side view, and C the end view, of such a system of railroad.

Fig. 136.



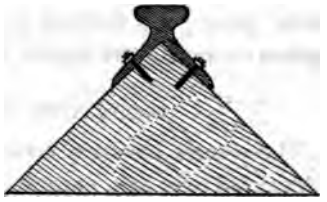
For these longitudinal bearings, chairs are unnecessary, and peculiarly shaped rails are preferable. A favorite form is that shown in Fig. 136, which has been made to weigh from 35 to 60 lbs. per yard. It is fastened by screws, 4 inches long, the heads of which are countersunk on the inner side, so as to be out of the way of the flange of the wheel. At the joints, four screws are employed. Such a rail, of 48 lbs. to the yard, resting on continuous sleepers, 9 inches by $4\frac{1}{2}$, is as strong as one of 75 lbs. resting on supports at intervals of 3 feet.*

* Crosy, Encyclopedia o. Civil Engineering, p. 1574.

Sometimes the rails are fastened by spikes with bent heads, driven just outside of them, and clasping them firmly.

Triangular sleepers have been employed, with a rail forked at bottom, as in the figure. The rail can thus be very firmly attached to the sleeper, the shape of which gives it much stability.

Fig. 137.



Evans' method of fastening is warmly recommended by Professor Vignoles. The rails are rolled with a slit, or groove, of a dove-tailed shape, (in its cross-section) running on their under side for their whole length. The bolts have heads of corresponding shape, and are slipped into the end of the groove, passed along it, and dropped through holes made at proper intervals in the longitudinal timbers. The lower ends of the bolts are cut into screws, and washers and nuts draw the rails close down to the timbers. They are easily tightened, and not exposed to injury, while spikes and screws get loose, and their heads are in the way.

Upon the Great Western Railroad, between Bristol and London, (on which Mr. I. K. Brunel first introduced into England the system of longitudinal bearings) the hollow rail, shown in Fig. 138, was adopted. The original rails weighed only 44 lbs. to the yard, and were 1¼ inch high, the head of the inner screw being countersunk. The later ones weigh 70 lbs. to the yard, and are 2¼ inches high; the increase of height be-

Fig. 138.



ing intended to compensate for not countersinking the nut of the inner screw. The longitudinal timbers are 15 by 9 inches, and the cross-ties bolted to them at intervals of 9 or 10 feet, are 5 by 8 inches. With such rails, and the broad gauge, this railroad combines speed and ease of motion in the highest degree yet attained.

INCLINATION OF THE RAILS.

The wheels having a conical shape, they would touch a level rail only on a narrow line, and both would soon be worn into grooves. To prevent this, the rails are sometimes inclined inward, so as to meet the cone of the wheel more directly, and to present a broader bearing surface. The usual inclination is from 1 in 29 to 1 in 20. It may be given by sloping the blocks, or by cutting the sleepers which support the rails, or may be formed in the original rolling of the rail. An objection to this breadth of contact is that a rubbing and grinding action is constantly caused by the unequal velocities with which the outer and inner parts of the coned wheels revolve, and produces the same effect as if the train was dragged a certain distance with its wheels locked.

ELEVATION OF OUTER RAIL.

When a railroad car enters upon a curve, the centrifugal force tends to force the flanges of its wheels against the outer rail. To resist this tendency, the outer rail is made higher than the inner one, so that an inclined plane may be formed beneath the cars, down which they will tend to slide in an inward direction, in opposition to their centrifugal impulse. The inclination should be such that the two antagonist forces may just balance each other. It will vary with the radius of the curve, the velocity upon

it, the gauge of the road, and the "cone" of the wheels. With these elements it may be readily calculated.* Some results (with the usual data) are given in the following table:

RADIUS OF THE CURVE.	ELEVATION OF THE OUTER RAIL.		
	At 10 miles per hour.	At 20 miles per hour.	At 30 miles per hour.
Feet.	Inches.	Inches.	Inches.
250	1.14	5.60	12.99
500	0.57	2.83	6.56
1000	0.29	1.43	3.30
2000	0.15	0.71	1.65
3000	0.10	0.47	1.10
4000	0.07	0.36	0.83
5000	0.06	0.28	0.66

An approximate rule for finding the elevation is this: "Multiply the square of the velocity, in feet per second, by the gauge of the railroad in inches; and divide the product by the accelerating force of gravity, multiplied by the radius of curvature in feet, and the quotient will be the elevation in inches."

For a velocity of 30 miles per hour on a curve of 1000 feet, this rule gives $\frac{44^2 \times 56\frac{1}{2}}{32 \times 1000} = 3.4$ inches.

In practice the maximum of elevation is only one inch; which is that due to a velocity of 30 miles per hour on a curve of two thirds of a mile radius. When the cars go faster than the velocity assumed in the calculation, which has determined the elevation, their flanges press the outer rail; when slower, they press the inner one.

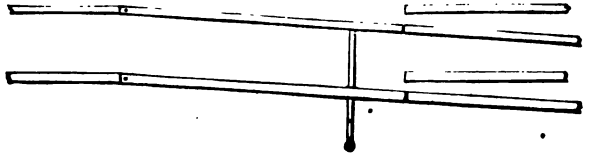
SIDINGS, CROSSINGS, ETC.

On railroads which have only a single track, a second one, called a *siding*, is occasionally laid for a short dis-

* See Pambour. pp. 277–290; and Lecount, pp. 135–140.

tance, to form a passing-place for meeting trains. *Crossings* are the arrangements by which cars pass from one track to the other. The angle of their divergence should not exceed $1\frac{1}{2}°$ or 2° for speeds of 20 or 30 miles per hour, but when the speed, as in mines, is not more than 8 miles per hour, the angle may be as many degrees.* They are always dangerous, and therefore the fewer of them that are employed the better. The misplacing of them, carelessly or malevolently, causes a large portion of the accidents on railways. Their simplest form is that of two "points" or "switches," which are attached at one end to the main track, and are moveable at the other, so as to continue the principal line, or to connect it at pleas-

Fig. 139.



ure with the side-track. The switches are usually moved by hand, with either a lever or an eccentric. A signal plate at the top of the lever, with which it moves, by its position shows to the engine-driver, as he approaches, to which track it is prepared to turn the train. Self-acting switches, kept in place by powerful spiral springs, and moved by the flanges of the engine wheels, have been tried; but the system of manual operation is preferred, with all its uncertainties, owing to the self-acting arrangement rendering it impossible for the conductor to know whether the switches are in place or not until he is upon

* Cresy, Encyclopedia of Civil Engineering, p. 1576.

them, when any precaution which might be required would be too late.*

Turn-tables, or Turn-plates, are platforms, turning on rollers upon an underground circular railroad, and forming a very convenient substitute for switches, in transferring carriages from one set of rails to another.

A *Hydraulic Traversing Frame* has been used instead of Turn-tables. It consists of a wrought-iron frame, under each corner of which is a cast-iron hydraulic press, operated by force pumps. The frame is pushed under the carriage to be moved, the pumps are worked, and raise the flanges clear of the rails. The carriage is then moved to the desired spot and there let down.†

SINGLE RAIL RAILROAD.

In this arrangement a single rail is supported on posts at a suitable height above the ground, and passes through the middle of the cars, which hang from it on each side, like two saddle-bags on a horse. The advantages of thus lowering the centre of gravity are considerable; the cars can never leave the track; and the expenses of construction are much reduced. In some situations this system might be very conveniently employed.

* Ritchie, p. 115.

† Cresy, Encyclopedia of Civil Engineering, p. 1282.

IV. MOTIVE POWERS.

The principal powers which have been employed to move carriages on railroads are Horses, Stationary Engines, Locomotives, and Atmospheric Pressure.

1. HORSE POWER.

The power of a horse in moving heavy loads at a slow rate, has been given on page 67; the usual conventional assumption being 150 lbs. moved at the rate of $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles per hour for 8 hours a day. At greater speeds his power very rapidly diminishes, a large portion of it being expended in moving his own weight. The following table shows the results obtained by different authors; those of Tredgold being for 6 hours daily labor, and those of Wood for 10 hours.

VELOCITY.	FORCE OF DRAUGHT; ACCORDING TO		
Miles per hour.	Leslie.	Tredgold.	Wood.
2	100	166	125
3	81	125	83
4	64	104	62
5	49	83	50
6	36	62	42
7	25	42	36
8	16		31
9	9		28
10	4		25
11	1		23
12	0		21

From the above table it appears that, according to Wood, at 4 miles per hour a horse can draw only half his load at 2 miles; at 8 miles only a quarter; and so on.

At 10 miles per hour Tredgold considers the power of

a horse to be 37 lbs. moved 10 miles per day. At the same velocity Sir John Macneill estimates it at 60 lbs., moved 8 miles per day.

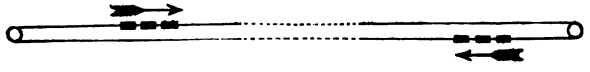
The power of a horse is also very rapidly diminished upon an ascent. On a slope of 1 in 7 ($8\frac{1}{4}°$) he can carry up only his own weight, without any load.

It is consequently very desirable to find a motive power on railroads, so much of which would not be uselessly lost at the high speeds which their diminution of friction renders possible. Steam has been therefore employed, through the medium of Stationary Engines, and of Locomotives.

2. STATIONARY ENGINES.

Stationary steam engines were once the rivals of locomotives, as motive powers for railroads, and were recommended by two distinguished engineers, less than twenty years ago, for adoption on the Liverpool and Manchester railway. It was proposed to place fixed engines along the line, at stations $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles apart. These engines were to turn large drums, or cylinders, around which were wound ropes, 4 or 5 inches in diameter, stretched along the road between the rails, and supported on rollers. The wagons were to be hooked to the ropes, and would be drawn onwards with them, as they were wound up on the revolving cylinders. An endless rope might also be employed, and two trains of cars be drawn at the same time in opposite

Fig. 140.



directions, as indicated by the arrows in the figure. When the cars had passed over the mile and a half, and reached

the end of one rope, they could be detached from it, and attached to the succeeding one, without any stoppage.

The system has some advantages for short lines over which the travel must pass at brief intervals, owing to the economy of working stationary engines; but it is utterly unsuited for general use. Its radical defect is, that the disarrangement of any single length of it, by any accident, must stop the travel on the whole line. It is a chain, the failure of any link of which will render the whole useless. It is therefore now seldom employed, except on inclined planes.

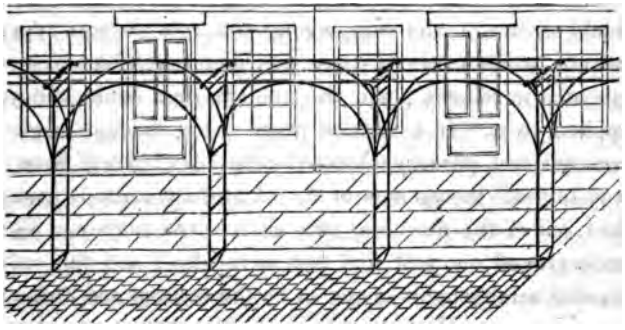
A very convenient application of the system is, however, seen on the London and Blackwall railway, 3½ miles long, with a fixed engine at each end. In this short distance there are five intermediate stations; but no detention is caused by them, for a car is appropriated to each, in proper order—the last of the train being the one belonging to the first station, and so on. On reaching it, the sort of pincers by which the car is attached to the rope, is opened, and the car there stops, while the others of the train move on.

A railroad worked by a stationary engine, would be the most convenient method of relieving the rush of travel through Broadway. The railroad track should be supported on iron columns, out of the way of carriages, as in the figure. These columns might be placed on the edges of the sidewalks, where now are the lamp and awning posts, and by extending over the gutter they would have a base of 3 feet.* Their lower extremities should be set

* This arrangement of the columns was suggested by Charles Ellett, Jun., C. E., in 1844, for an "Atmospheric Railroad." In 1834, Mr. J. H. Patten proposed to use a secondary street, and to connect the columns by arches across the street, forming a flooring on which horses should travel.

Fig. 141.

BROADWAY RAILROAD.



in heavy masses of masonry. At top they should spread outward, a foot on each side, which would give sufficient width for the railroad track. The columns should be set at distances of 15 or 20 feet, and connected by flat arches. There would be no flooring over the street, and the rails would intercept no more light than do the boards which now connect the awning posts. No locomotives, or even horses, would pass over the road; but an endless rope would continually run over pulleys, and light cars would be under the most perfect control, and could be attached to it, or disengaged, at will, and stopped more easily than an ordinary omnibus. At the upper end of Broadway, a stationary engine, or the water-power of the Croton, would easily and cheaply keep up the circulation, which would pass up one side of the street and down the other. At each corner might be a platform, to which there would be a short flight of steps from the sidewalk, the ascent of which would be very easy; or a certain number of corner houses might be used as dépôts, so that passengers might step into the cars from their second-story windows. As

these cars would replace the omnibuses, the entire street would be left for miscellaneous travel.

A railroad on the surface of the ground, with its continual stream of cars stopping up the cross-streets every minute, would create a worse evil than that which it was intended to remedy; and the endless rope could not be applied to it. If a railroad were made through a secondary street, passengers would not generally leave Broadway to avail themselves of it. A *surface* railroad being thus out of the question, two alternatives remain. The underground one will find few advocates; and the only feasible arrangement seems to be the column and endless rope system. With its cheap construction, economical working, and thronged travel, it could scarcely fail to be the most profitable railroad ever built, and might be made to add largely to the city revenue.

3. LOCOMOTIVE ENGINES.

When a steam engine is required to move from its place, and to travel with its load, as do horses of flesh and blood, its usual weighty appendages of cold-water cistern, walking-beam, fly-wheel, &c., must be dispensed with. High-pressure steam must therefore be employed in order to enable the engine to combine the necessary compactness, lightness, and power.

HISTORY.

The first locomotive engine was constructed in 1802, by Richard Trevithick, who took out a patent in conjunction with Andrew Vivian.* Both were Cornwall engi-

* In 1759, however, Dr. Robison, then a student in the University of Glasgow, suggested to Watt the application of the steam engine to moving

neers. This engine was tried on common roads, but in 1804, Trevithick applied a second one to a tram-road in South Wales, on which it drew ten tons of iron at the rate of 5 miles an hour.

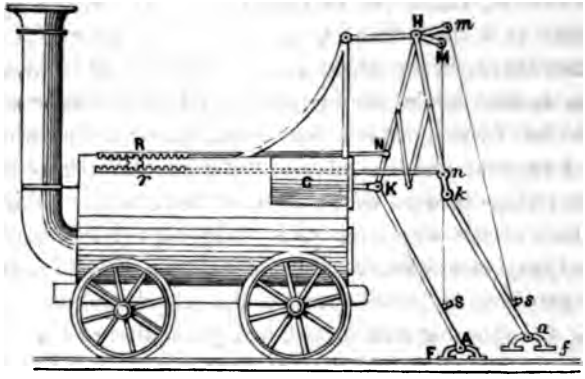
Many years elapsed before any considerable improvements were made, owing in a great degree to useless efforts to overcome a difficulty which never had any real existence. When steam is applied to propel a wheel carriage, each piston-rod, to which the steam gives a backward and forward motion, is attached to a pin on one of the wheels, called the driving-wheel, and turns it by a crank, as a man turns a grindstone. If there was no friction between the wheel and the road, the wheel would turn around, while the carriage would remain stationary. But the friction, which does exist, prevents the wheel from slipping, and it is enabled to turn only by propelling the carriage forward over a distance equal to the circumference of the wheel for each complete revolution of it. The imaginary difficulty referred to, was the notion that the adhesion or "bite" between the wheel and the rail, was so slight that with a load, and particularly on an ascent, the wheels would slip, slide, or "skid," either completely or partially, and thus fail to propel the engine.

Great ingenuity was expended in devising remedies for this non-existent evil. Wheels were at first made with knobs and claws to take hold of the ground; in 1811 a toothed rack was laid along the road, and a wheel with teeth was attached to the engine and fitted into the rack;

wheel carriages. In 1782, Murdoch, to whom Trevithick was a pupil, made a model of a steam-carriage; and in 1784 Watt described such an application in his patent. In 1801, Oliver Evans in Philadelphia moved a steam-dredging machine a mile and a half on wheels turned by its own engine.

and in 1812 a chain was stretched between the extreme ends of the road, and passed around a grooved wheel fixed to the engine and turned by it. But the most singular and ingenious contrivance was patented in 1813 by Mr. William Brunton. He attached to the back of his engine two legs, or propellers, which, being alternately moved by the engine, pushed it before them. The propellers imitated the legs of a man, or the fore legs of a horse, as shown in the figure.

Fig. 142.



The legs are indicated by HKF, and H*kf*. H represents the Hip-joint, K and *k* the Knee-joints, A and *a* the Ankle-joints, and F and *f* the Feet.

We will first examine the action of the front leg. The knee, K, is attached to the end of the piston-rod, which the steam drives backward and forward in the horizontal cylinder C. When the piston is driven outward, it presses the leg, KF, against the ground, and thus propels the engine forward as a man shoves a boat ahead by pressing with a pole against the bottom of a river. As the engine advances, the leg straightens, the point H is

carried forward, and the extremity, M, of the bent lever, HM, is raised. A cord, MS, being attached to S, the shin of the leg, the motion of the lever tightens the cord, and finally raises the foot from the ground and prepares it to take a fresh step when the reversed action of the piston has lowered it again.

The action of the other leg is precisely similar, but motion is communicated to it from the first one. Just above the knee of the front leg, at N, is attached a rod, on which is a toothed rack, R. Working in it is a cog-wheel, which enters also a second rack, *r*, below it, which is connected by a second rod, with a point, *n*, of the other leg. When the piston is driven out and pushes the engine from the knee, the rack, R, is drawn backwards and turns the cog-wheel, which then draws the lower rack, *r*, forwards, and operates on the hind leg, precisely as the piston-rod does on the front one, and thus the two legs take alternate steps, and walk on with the engine.

This locomotive, or "mechanical traveller," as it was termed by its inventor, moved on a railway at the rate of 2½ miles per hour, with the tractive force of 4 horses.

All these contrivances were, however, rendered useless by the discovery in 1814, by actual experiment, that the adhesion, or friction, of the wheels was amply sufficient for propelling the engine, even with a heavy load attached to it, and up a considerable ascent. Even if the adhesion were less than it is, it could be increased to an almost unlimited extent, by inducing a galvanic action between the engine and the rails.*

The first really successful locomotive was constructed

* Lecount, p. 352.

by Mr. George Stephenson in 1814. By applying the "steam blast," he doubled its power and enabled it to run 6 miles per hour, and to draw 30 tons.

Still no great progress was made in the application of steam to locomotion, until, in 1829, the directors of the Liverpool and Manchester railway resolved to employ locomotives in preference to stationary engines, and offered a premium for the best engine, not heavier than six tons, which should be able to draw twenty tons at the rate of ten miles per hour, and should fulfil certain other conditions. Four engines appeared, but the "Rocket" engine, made by Mr. Robert Stephenson, won the prize, having run at an average speed of 15 miles per hour, and having performed one mile at the rate of 29½ miles per hour.

Since that time the progress of improvement has been onward, and one engine has travelled 70 miles per hour; another,* weighing 15¾ tons, has drawn 1268 tons (in a train of 158 coal-cars, 2020 feet long) 84 miles in 8 hours, over a line of which 40 miles were level, and which had curves of only 700 feet radius; and a third,* weighing only 8 tons, has drawn 309 tons on a level, and 16 tons up an inclined plane which rose 369 feet to the mile. The Rocket, however, contained the germs of all the principles which have been so wonderfully developed in its successors, and which will now be briefly noticed.

* Made by William Norris: Philadelphia.

PRINCIPLES.

The power of an engine is proportional to the quantity of steam which it can generate in a given time; for each revolution of the wheels corresponds to a double stroke of each piston, and consequently to four cylinder-fulls of steam. It is therefore necessary to expose the largest possible surface of water to the action of heat. This is most effectually attained by a *tubular boiler*, patented by Mr. Seguin in 1828, but perfected by Mr. Stephenson in 1829. Through the boiler, which occupies the principal mass of the engine, run a great number of small brass tubes, and through them the flame and heated air pass from the fire-box to the chimney. The tubes are about 6 feet long, 2 inches in diameter, and from 90 to 120 in number. They have been made 150 in number, and $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches in diameter.* By this contrivance, and by surrounding the fire-box with a double casing, containing water, all the heat is absorbed by the water before it reaches the chimney.

The introduction of such tubes tripled the evaporating power of the engine, and caused a saving of 40 per cent of the fuel. But the abstraction of all the heat from the air, destroyed the draught of the chimney, and therefore the activity of the fire. This evil seemed insurmountable, in spite of the use of fanners, till George Stephenson used the waste steam, which passed from the cylinder after working the engine, to create an artificial draught, by discharging it into the chimney. This *steam blast* has been termed the life-blood of the locomotive machine.

To economize heat still farther, the cylinders are some-

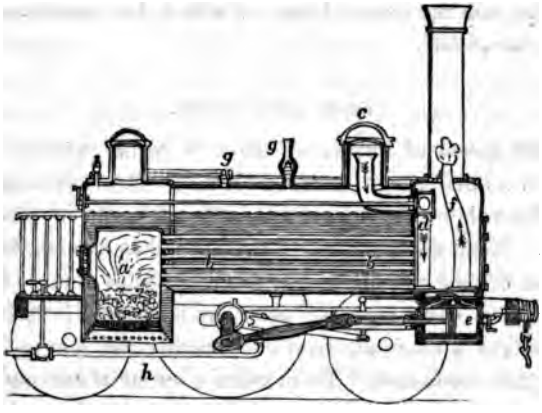
* The tubes being very perishable, the Earl of Dundonald and others have proposed to construct boilers with the water in the tubes to be heated, instead of the fire in the tubes.

times placed within the smoke-box, or bottom of the chimney, so that none of their steam is condensed by the cold atmosphere. In this position, besides being nearer the centre of resistance, they act with a less injurious strain; although, two pistons being necessary to pass the "dead-points" of the crank, their action is unavoidably unequal on each side in turn. But this arrangement gives less room for the machinery, and renders necessary a double-cranked axle, which is consequently much weakened, though cut from a solid mass of iron. Both the outside and inside arrangements have their advocates.

Six wheels are generally employed, the two largest being the driving-wheels to which the power is applied. These are from 5 to 7 feet in diameter, the others being from 3 to 4. Sometimes all are made of the same size. Eight wheels are also used, four large and four small, the latter being under a truck, which supports one end of the engine, and is attached to it by a pivot in its centre, around which it can readily turn when on a curve. The springs are so adjusted that the principal part of the weight of the engine is thrown upon the driving-wheels. Sometimes two pairs of wheels are coupled together to obtain greater adhesion in ascending inclined planes, but this arrangement produces an unequal strain.

The eccentrics which open and shut the slide-valves to admit the steam to each end of the cylinders in turn, are so adjusted as to shut off the steam from one end of the cylinder and admit it to the other a little while before the piston has finished its stroke, so as to permit the expansive action of steam, and to form a sort of steam spring, to deaden the jerks of the engine. The degree of opening of the valve in advance is termed the "lead," and is usually from one-eighth to one-fourth of an inch.

Fig. 143.



The above figure is a longitudinal section through a modern locomotive engine, in one of its very varied forms. *a* represents the fire-box; from which the flames and heated air pass, through the tubes *b b*, into the smoke-box at the other end of the engine. The water of the boiler, (which is cased with wood to prevent loss of heat by radiation) surrounds the fire-box and the tubes, and the steam generated by the heat thus absorbed, is collected in the steam chamber *c*. Thence it passes, through *d*, to the cylinder *e*, and being admitted, by the slide-valve, alternately before and behind the piston, it gives to it the reciprocating motion, which the crank on the axle of the driving-wheel converts into the revolution which propels the engine. The blast-pipe, *f*, conveys the waste steam from the cylinders into the chimney, to increase its draught. *g g* are safety-valves, one of which should be locked up, so as to be out of the control of the engine-driver. *h* is one of the feed-pipes which conduct the water from the tender to the boiler, into which it is

pumped by small force-pumps, which are worked by the engine, and the derangement of which has produced serious accidents.

SPEED AND POWER.

The *speed* of an engine depends on the rapidity with which its boiler can generate steam. One cylinder full of steam is required for each stroke of each of the pistons. Each double stroke corresponds to one revolution of the driving-wheels, and to the propulsion of the engine through a space equal to their circumference. Wheels seven feet in diameter pass over twenty-two feet in each complete revolution. To produce a speed of seventy-five miles per hour, they must revolve exactly five times in a second; and to effect this number of revolutions each piston must make double that number of strokes in the same time. In this way does this ponderous machine divide time into tenths of seconds, almost as precisely as the delicate chronometer of the astronomer.

This rapid reciprocating motion of the pistons is very destructive to the machinery, and is too great to attain the maximum effect of the power expended. It would therefore be very desirable to lessen this rapidity, and to provide some means of multiplying the motion of the pistons, as by chains on pulleys, &c.

High velocities are also very expensive, in consequence of the rapidity with which the steam must be generated, and rammed, as it were, into the cylinders. The same effect might be produced by one quarter of the quantity of steam, if time were given it to act expansively.

The *power* of an engine in drawing loads, depends on the pressure of the steam, which is usually kept at 50 or 60 lbs. to the square inch. It is also limited by the adhe-

sion between the road and the driving-wheels, which is proportional to the weight pressing upon the latter; so that instead of the weight of the engine being an obstacle, it is one of the principal elements of power. The average adhesion may be considered to be one-eighth of the weight.* The tractive power of an engine of 200 gross tons weight, with 16 tons resting on the driving-wheels, would, on this assumption, be $16 \times 2240 \div 8 = 4480$ lbs. If the friction be 8 lbs. to the ton, its gross load, exclusive of its own weight, would be $4480 \div 8 = 560$ tons. If the ratio of the weight of the freight to the joint weight of the car and freight be as 6 to 10, the quantity of freight which such an engine could convey on a level would be $\frac{6}{16} \times 560 = 336$ tons, inclusive of tender, for which ten tons should be deducted.

The diminution of this power on inclinations has been noticed on page 249, but is more fully shown in the following *Table*, which is calculated for an engine of 20 tons, all resting on the driving-wheels, and for a friction of $8\frac{1}{2}$ lbs. to the ton.

Ascent, in feet per mile.	Tons of freight transported.	Fractional part of the full load on a level.	Number of engines necessary to transport the full load.
Level.	389	1.000	1
20	185	.476	$2\frac{1}{4}$
30	145	.372	$2\frac{3}{4}$
40	118	.304	$3\frac{1}{4}$
50	98	.252	4
60	84	.215	$4\frac{3}{4}$
70	71	.180	$5\frac{1}{2}$
80	63	.160	$6\frac{1}{4}$

* The greatest adhesion of iron upon iron, is about one-sixth of the insistent weight; but in wet and freezing weather it is reduced to almost

From the preceding table it appears, that on an ascending grade of 20 feet to the mile, two engines could not transport as much as one on a level; that at 50 feet to the mile, four engines would be needed, and six engines on a grade of 80 feet to the mile, to do the work of one on a level.*

WORKING EXPENSES.

All the expenses of working the road for any given time are usually added together, and divided by the total number of miles run in that time by engines drawing trains. In this way is obtained the fairest average of working expenses, which are thus measured by *the cost of running trains per mile.*

The principal items of expense per mile for a locomotive engine of fifteen tons, on the leading roads in this country, have been found to be as follows:

Wages of engine-driver, firemen, &c.,	6 to 10 cents.
Fuel, ...	8 to 24 "
Oil and cotton waste, ...	1 to 2 "
Repairs of engine and tender, .	5 to 9 "
Interest on cost of engines, . .	3 to 4 "
Repairs of road—one-fifth—due to motive power, ...	3 to 4 "
Deterioration of iron—one-half—due to the same, ...	4 to 5 "
Total cost per mile run,	30 to 58 "

nothing. It lessens with the increase of the slope of the road, nearly as the sine of the angle of inclination. It would evidently be nothing, if the road were vertical.

* See Report to N. Y. Legislature, 1847, of Commissioners for locating the N. Y. and Erie Railroad.

The average cost of motive power is, therefore, 44 cents per mile run. To this must be added the cost of repairs, and of renewal of road, which consists of two parts: one independent of the trade, and averaging, on timber roads, $500 per mile annually, ($300 being for repairs, and 200 for annual share of renewal); and the other proportional to the trade, and about one-third of a cent per ton per mile.

The expense of cars (repairing and renewal) is about one-half of a cent per ton per mile.

The wages of agents, conductors, clerks, &c., is about two-thirds of a cent per ton per mile.

The annual cost of maintaining in operation a well-managed line of railroad, according to these data, is about 1¼ cents for each ton carried over it, and 44 cents for each mile run by all the engines, besides $500 for each mile of the road. If it be likewise a passenger road, add ¾ of a cent per mile for each passenger carried.*

The complete average expense per train per mile of running the principal roads in the United States was estimated, in 1838,† at 100 cents.

In England, in 1840,‡	. . .	72 "
Utica and Schenectady Railroad, 1839 to 1841,		115 "
Mass. Western Railroad, 1840 to 1844,		71 "
Average of Mass. Railroads in 1845,	.	65 "
Three new lines in Massachusetts in 1845,§		40 "

* See an able series of papers by Charles Ellett, Jun., C. E., in the Journal of the Franklin Institute, Sept. 1842, &c.

† Chevalier de Gerstner. ‡ Professor Vignoles. § John B. Jervis.

SAFETY OF TRAVELLING.

The comparative safety of railroads is one of their most valuable attributes, though the one least appreciated and most imperfectly realized. The popular impression is generally the reverse of the truth, for an accident to a stage-coach is seldom heard of beyond the immediate scene of its occurrence, while any railroad disaster is passed from paper to paper over the whole land.

There are many reasons why travelling on railroads should be safer than on common roads. The former are level instead of hilly, and smooth instead of uneven; and all miscellaneous travel is excluded.

The cars are safer than coaches, because their centres of gravity are lower; their axles are less exposed to violent shocks, and therefore are less subject to break; and they are altogether less exposed to be overturned.

Locomotive engines are safer than horses, because they are not liable to take fright, shy, or run away; and can be stopped at once by a brake, tamed down by opening a valve, and backed by simply moving a lever.

The statistics of railroads fully confirm the conclusions of theory. On the English railroads, according to the parliamentary returns, between 1840 and 1845, both inclusive, more than 120,000,000 of passengers were carried, and of these only 66 were killed, or one in nearly two millions; and only 324 others were in any way injured, or one in nearly four hundred thousand.

On the Belgian railroads, 6,609,215 persons travelled between 1835 and 1839, and of these 15 were killed and 16 wounded. But of these, 26 were persons employed on the railroads, and only 3 *passengers* were killed and 2 wounded. In 1842, of 2,716,755 passengers, only three

were killed, and of these one was a suicide, and the other two met their deaths by crossing the line.

On French railroads, 212 miles in length, of 1,889,718 passengers who travelled over 316,945 miles, in the first half of 1843, not one was either killed or wounded, and only three servants of the railroad suffered.

Comparing with this the travelling by horse-coaches in the same region, we find that in seven years, from 1834 to 1840, 74 persons were killed, and 2073 wounded!

But few as are the accidents on railways they are still much more numerous than they need be. They may be divided into those which arise from mismanagement and negligence, and those which are caused by inherent faults in the construction and working of the railroad.

To the former class belong accidents from collision. When two engines and trains meet each other, or when one overtakes another, the destructive consequences, which so often ensue, are generally due to the carelessness or ignorance of the conductors, or engine-drivers of the train; and are finally attributable to the false economy of employing at a low salary incompetent persons. The danger of collision would also be much lessened, if trains running in different directions were confined invariably to one line of rails.

Many accidents have arisen from a slow train being overtaken by a faster one. There is extreme danger in permitting one engine to follow another, except at very considerable distances; and a mile is a very short distance when measured by the brief time in which a locomotive can pass over it.

The practice of attaching an engine behind a train to assist the front one in the ascent of a steep grade, is also fraught with danger; for any derangement of either en-

gine makes it the anvil on which the other one falls like a trip-hammer, crushing every thing between them.

The excessive speed demanded by the impatience of the travelling public diminishes the controlling power, and makes the consequences of any negligence or malicious obstruction proportionally destructive.

Wilful disobedience of orders on the part of engine-drivers and conductors, (as to time, turning-out places, waiting for other trains, &c.) reckless exposure to possibilities of collision, and insane confidence in good-luck, are causes of the majority of accidents; and though no faithful superintendent would permit such men to have a second opportunity for similar misconduct, yet the disastrous effects of even the first faults might be generally avoided by employing only men of undoubted intelligence, experience, sobriety, and self-control, and securing the services of the very best of their class by liberal compensations.

The second division of accidents included those caused by inherent faults in the construction and working of the railroad. These may be in a great degree guarded against, by careful and continual inspection of the line of the road, and examination of all parts of the engines and cars.

The explosion of the locomotive boiler is often injurious, if not fatal, to the engine-men, and by its stoppage of the train may cause a collision with a following one.

The settling of an embankment may cause a depression of one side of the road, which will compel the engine to run off. The looseness of a rail, its breakage, (when supported only at intervals) the misplacing of a switch, &c., may produce a similar result. The destructive consequences would be much lessened, if means were provided for instantly detaching the train from the engine,

or if they were so coupled that they would be separated by any lateral strain.

The breakage of the axles of the engine or carriages has caused many accidents; but this danger is greatly lessened by the eight wheels of the American cars,* and by the appendages of "Safety-beams."

The sparks from the locomotive chimney frequently communicate fire to the train, and have thus, in one instance, caused great loss of life, increased by the impossibility of communicating the intelligence to the engine-driver in time to arrest the disaster.

SIGNALS.

Many of the accidents which occur with the locomotive system might be prevented by a uniform, simple, and complete plan of signals. *Red* flags and lights for imminent danger; *green* for caution; and *white* for safety, are leading features in all the systems. The signals are made by the policemen, who are, or should be, stationed along the line, to see that the rails are clear, to communicate intelligence, to work the signals, &c.

The Danger signal is a *red* flag by day, or red glass lamp by night, waved backwards and forwards. The engine should be stopped the moment this signal is seen. *Any* signal, *violently* waved, should also cause an immediate stoppage.

The Caution signal is a *green* flag, or light, and should be obeyed by slackening the speed of the engine. When

* In this respect we are far in advance of European Railroads, and a writer in the Westminster Review lately suggested, as an improvement of the highest importance, a peculiar style of car, which was almost precisely identical with those which have been for many years in general use on American Railroads.

the green flag is held so as to point upwards, it indicates that another engine is less than five minutes in advance of the one to which the signal is made. When held pointing downwards, it enjoins a slow rate of speed as a precaution against defects in the rails at that place.

The Safety, or "All-right" signal, is a white lamp at night, and by day the upright position of the policeman with his flags furled.

These signals are made by the policemen, either with hand flags and lamps, or by arms which are moveable on signal posts, and worked by cords.

In the absence of these conveniences the policeman makes the signal "All right," by extending his arm horizontally; the Caution signal by holding one arm straight up; and the Danger signal by holding both arms straight up, or by waving violently a hat, or any other object.

The Danger signal is always to be made immediately after any engine or carriage has passed along the line, and is to be continued for five minutes; it is also to be made whenever there is any obstruction on the line, or any danger of it.

The Caution signal is always to follow the Danger signal, and to be continued for five minutes; it is also to be made wherever there is any reason for slackening the speed.

The All-right signal is to be made only when the signal-man has satisfied himself that the line is clear, unobstructed, and free from any suspicion of danger. Every signal-man should immediately report to his nearest superior officer any instance of disobedience to the signals which he had made.

In foggy weather both day and night signals are given;

and in addition, when any emergency requires the *immediate* and certain stoppage of any train, a detonating compound, packed in a small box, is fastened to the rail with slips of lead, and explodes with a tremendous noise when a wheel passes over it, giving an unmistakeable signal for instant stoppage.

White and red lights on the front and back of a train at night should be so arranged and combined as to indicate the direction, speed, &c. of the train. But all these precautions are finally dependent for their complete success upon the character of the persons in the employ of the company.

4. ATMOSPHERIC PRESSURE.

The pressure of the atmosphere is usually assumed to be 15 lbs. on every square inch of surface, and though the equality of this pressure in all directions renders it generally insensible, it becomes very apparent to the senses when the hand is held on one end of a cylinder from the interior of which the air is drawn out by an air-pump. It is this pressure which is the motive power of the ATMOSPHERIC RAILWAY.

The first idea of such a construction seems to have originated in 1805, in which year an Englishman, named Taylor, proposed to employ atmospheric pressure for sending letters and parcels from town to town. His plan was to lay a long tube, like a gas or water pipe, between the places, and to fit into it an air-tight piston. If the air was pumped out from one end of such a tube, the pressure of the atmosphere would force forward the piston, and any thing attached to it.

In 1810, Medhurst proposed to make a tube, archway, or tunnel, large enough to contain carriages with passengers, to be propelled in a similar manner. But this scheme was never put into practice, for travellers did not relish the idea of being shot through a tube, like pellets in a popgun.

The problem was now to devise some means of communicating the motion of a piston, blown through an air-tight tube, to a carriage on the outside of this tube.

Medhurst, in 1827, proposed to make the desired communication and application of power, through a channel, or groove, on the top of the tube, filled with water to make it air-tight. He also suggested the use of a square

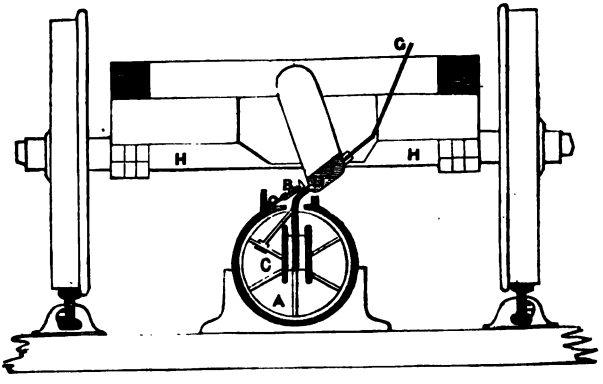
iron tube, with half its top rising and falling on hinges, and an arm coming through the opening to connect the piston to the carriage.

Vallance, in 1824, patented a variation of the tunnel of Medhurst.

Pinkus, an American residing in London, in 1834 proposed the use of a tube with a slit in its top and a sort of rope for the covering valve.

But no substantial success was attained till Clegg, in 1839, invented his flap valve, and, in conjunction with Samuda, developed the present system. Fig. 144 is a

Fig. 144.



cross-section of the pipe, valve, &c. The pipe, A, is of cast iron, and about eighteen inches in diameter. It is laid between the rails on which the carriages are to run. Along its top is a continuous slit, or longitudinal opening, through which is to pass obliquely the iron bar, or arm, D, which connects the piston, C, with the carriage, of which HH is an axle. The valve which covers this slit, and which is shown in cross-section at B, is essentially a

strip of leather, one edge of which is fastened to one side of the slit, so that the rest of it can rise and fall, and thus alternately open and close the slit. In the figure it is represented as open. To strengthen it, plates of iron, each eight inches long, are attached to its upper and under sides. The under ones are just wide enough to fit into the slit; the upper ones are a little wider, to prevent the valve from being pressed into the pipe. On each side of the slit is a rib, or projection, cast with the pipe, and forming a sort of trough, at the bottom of which the valve lies when shut. This trough is filled with a mixture of tallow and bees-wax, which, after being melted and cooled, adheres to the edge of the valve and makes it perfectly air-tight.

Fig. 145.

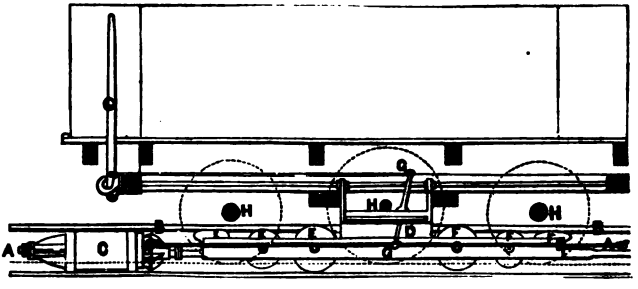


Fig. 145 is a longitudinal section of the pipe, piston, and leading carriage. The same letters of reference are employed as in Fig. 144.

A steam engine, at the end of a length of 3 miles of the pipe, works an air-pump, which draws out a portion of the air from the pipe, AA. The air behind the piston, (shown at C) being no longer balanced by the air before the piston, presses it forward. The small wheels, EEE,

behind the piston, raise the edge of the valve in order to make way for the connecting arm, D, which draws the carriage (of which HHH are the axles) onward with the piston. The small wheels, FFF, behind the arm, lift up the valve to admit the air more freely to press on the back of the piston. The piston and carriage thus proceed as long as there is a greater pressure of air behind than before them.

To re-seal the valve, after the piston has passed, in readiness for being again exhausted, the second carriage of the train carries under it a small steel wheel which presses down the valve, and which is followed by a heater, or copper tube, five feet long, and filled with burning charcoal, which melts the composition in the trough and solders down the edge of the valve.

To stop the train the brake may be applied; or the lever, shown at G in Figs. 144 and 145, may open a valve in the piston, and admit air in front of it to destroy the vacuum, and consequently the propelling power.

When the carriage has reached the end of one length of 3 miles, it passes into the next length of pipe by an entrance, or equilibrium valve, ingeniously contrived to permit the change without affecting the vacuum.

The power of this system depends upon the size of the pipe, and the perfection of the vacuum in front of the piston. If the pipe be 18 inches in diameter, the area of the piston will be 254 square inches, and if a perfect vacuum could be attained, the pressure of the atmosphere upon this surface would be $254 \times 15 = 3810$ lbs. Calling the friction 10 lbs. to the ton, this power would be sufficient to move 381 tons. In practice, however, the vacuum is seldom reduced below 8 lbs. to the square inch, or half an atmosphere, there being an unavoidable leakage.

The speed is proportioned to the rapidity with which the air-pump exhausts the pipe, and therefore to the velocity with which the air-pump piston moves, and to the ratio between its area and that of the travelling piston. Air rushes into a vacuum with a velocity of 800 miles per hour, and this is therefore the maximum limit of speed. It is probable, however, that a railroad which approximated to this speed would find but few passengers, and a mile in 62 seconds, or 58 miles per hour, is the nearest approach to it yet made.

The vacuum may be made not only by working an air-pump by a steam engine or by water-wheels, but by filling an air-tight vessel with water, subsequently allowed to run out at a depth greater than that at which the atmosphere will support a column of it.

The time required to exhaust a 3 mile length of pipe, by the usual air-pump, is 4 minutes. Allow 5 minutes for the train to pass, and the 4 minutes needed to exhaust the pipe again, would give 9 minutes as the least possible interval between the starting of trains, since only one train at a time can be on any one length of pipe. The application of this system to a Broadway railway, as has been suggested by some projectors, would, for this reason, be wholly impracticable.

The principal *advantages* claimed for the Atmospheric Railroad by its advocates are the following:

Its cars can ascend any inclination however steep; since the force capable of being applied does not depend at all upon the adhesion of the wheels to the rails, as in the case of locomotives. At a certain degree of steepness locomotive engines could not carry up themselves, much less a load; while the piston of an Atmospheric Railroad would exert equal force if its pipe were even

vertical, though of course with much less profitable effect.

The engine and tender being dispensed with, the force which would have been expended in moving their weight of 20 or 30 tons, is so much clear saving.

The rails may be made much lighter and will last much longer, where they have not to sustain the shocks of the locomotive, which is the most powerful agent in their destruction.

High speed with locomotives involves great waste of power, in consequence of the disadvantageous velocity with which the pistons must move. It is not so with the atmospheric system.

But greater safety is one of the most important recommendations of this system; for the cars cannot run off the track, being securely attached to the pipe; nor can they ever come into collision with each other, for no two trains can be on the same length of pipe at once.

On the other hand, if any obstacle be on the track, there is less power of stopping them, and none at all of reversing their motions; and the great objection to the stationary engine system—that the failure of one link deranges the whole chain—applies to this plan also.

But the comparative economy of the Atmospheric and Locomotive systems is the principal element in determining their relative merits. Much greater cheapness of working is claimed, by its partisans, for the atmospheric system, but this is strenuously denied by other engineers, and the testimony is so conflicting and varying, in consequence of the insufficiency of the data, that no satisfactory conclusion can be arrived at. The balance of argument seems, however, to be against the profitable employment of the system in ordinary cases. Under some pecu-

liar circumstances, however, such as the case of a line with steep grades, on which light trains must be run at short intervals, it may probably be advantageously applied.

The longitudinal valve being the weak point of the system, several attempts have been made to dispense with it. The most successful inventions have been those of Pilbrow; and of Julien and Vallirio.

Compressed air, Carbonic acid gas, Electro-magnetism, &c., have been also proposed as motive powers for railroads, but none of them seem likely to rival, in power, speed, or economy, that most magnificent and life-like of all human creations, the Locomotive Engine.

CHAPTER VI.

THE MANAGEMENT OF TOWN ROADS.

"The money levied is more than double of what is necessary for executing in the completest manner the work, which is often executed in a very slovenly manner, and sometimes not executed at all."

ADAM SMITH.

A WISE and well-regulated system of managing the repairs of roads, and of obtaining the greatest degree of improvement with the least amount of labor, is as important as their judicious construction. The "*Road-tax*" system, of personal service and commutation, though nearly universal among us, is unsound in its principle, unjust in its operation, wasteful in its practice, and unsatisfactory in its results. Borrowed from the "statute-labor" of England, and the "*Corvée*" or "*Prestation en nature*" of France, like them it is a remnant of the times of feudal vassalage, when one of the tenures by which land was held was the obligation to make the roads passable for the troops of the lord of the manor. The evil consequences of the system will be examined, when we have briefly explained its organization in the state of New York, where it has been rendered as perfect as its nature permits.*

* A convenient edition of the revised road act, with commentaries, &c., was published at Rochester in 1845.

The directing power is vested in "*Commissioners* of Highways," who are chosen in each town at the annual town meeting, and have "the care and superintendence of the highways and bridges therein." Subordinate to them are "*Overseers*," of whom are chosen, at the annual town-meeting, as many as there are road districts in the town. The commissioners have the authority to direct the overseers as to the grade of the road, how it should be shaped and drained, and the like. They may also lay out new roads. The principal duties of the overseers are to summon the persons subject to perform labor on the roads, to see that they actually work, and to collect fines and commutation money. The commissioners are to estimate the cost of improvements necessary on the roads and bridges of the town, and the board of supervisors are to cause the amount to be levied, but within the limit, for any one year, of two hundred and fifty dollars. But, if a legal town meeting so vote, the supervisors may levy "a sum of money, in addition to the sum now allowed by law, not exceeding five hundred dollars in any one year."

"Every person owning or occupying land in the town in which he or she resides, and every male inhabitant above the age of twenty-one years, residing in the town where the assessment is made, shall be assessed to work on the public highways in such town." The lands of non-residents are also to be assessed. The whole number of days' work to be assessed shall be at least three times the number of taxable inhabitants in such town; and may be as many as the commissioners shall think proper.

Persons assessed to work on the highways, upon receiving twenty-four hours' notice from the overseers, must appear either in person, or by able-bodied substitutes; or pay a sum of one dollar for each day's neglect, unless

they shall have previously *commuted* at the rate of sixty-two and a half cents per day. A team, cart, wagon, or plough, with a pair of horses or oxen, and a man to manage them, satisfies an assessment of three days.

Such are the principal features of the present system. They are all defective in a greater or less degree.

In the first place, the condition of the roads, which is so important an element of the wealth and comfort of the whole community, should not be allowed to remain at the mercy of the indolence, or false economy, of the various small townships through which the roads pass. In one town, its public spirit, wealth, and pride, may induce it to make a good road; in the adjoining town, a short-sighted policy, looking only to private interest in its narrowest sense, may have led the inhabitants to work upon the roads barely enough to put them into such a condition as will allow a wagon to be slowly drawn over them.

In the next place, the "commissioners" who have the primitive direction of the improvements and repairs, should be liberally compensated for the time and attention which they give to the work. Gratuitous services are seldom efficient; at best they are temporary and local, and dependent on the whims, continued residence, and life of the party; and if the compensation be insufficient, the same evils exist though in a less degree. Skill, labor, and time cannot be obtained and secured without being adequately paid for.

The third defect in the system is the annual election of the commissioners and overseers. When men of suitable ability, knowledge, and experience have been once obtained, they should be permanently continued in office. On the present system of annual rotation, as soon as the overseer has learned something in his year's

apprenticeship, his experience is lost, and another takes his place, and begins in his turn to take lessons in repairing roads at the expense of their condition. In other occupations, an apprenticeship of some years is thought necessary before a person is considered as qualified to practise with his own capital; while a road overseer, the moment that he is chosen, is thought fit to direct a work requiring much science, at the expense of the town's capital of time, labor, and money.

In the fourth place, the *fundamental principle* of the Road-tax is a false one. Its contemporary custom of requiring rents to be paid in kind, has long since been found to be less easy and equitable than money rents. Just so is work paid for by the piece preferable in every respect to compulsory labor by the day. Men are now taken from their peculiar occupations in which they are skilful, and transferred to one of which they know nothing. A good ploughman does not think himself necessarily competent to forge the coulter of his plough, or to put together its woodwork. He knows that it is truer economy for him to pay a mechanic for his services. But the laws assume him to be a skilful road-maker—a more difficult art than plough-making—and compel him to act as one; though his clumsiness in repairing his plough would injure only himself, while his road-blunders are injurious to the whole community. Skill in any art is only to be acquired by practical and successful experience, aided by the instructions of those who already possess it. An artisan cannot be extemporized.

Fifthly, labor by the day is always less profitable than that done by the piece, in which each man's skill and industry receive proportionate rewards. Working on the roads is generally made a half holiday by those who as-

semble at the summons of the overseer. Few of the men or horses do half a day's work, the remainder of their time being lost in idleness, and perhaps half of even the actual working time being wasted by its misdirection.

Lastly, it follows from the preceding, that the commutation system operates very unfairly and severely upon those who commute; for they pay the price of a full day's work, and their tax is therefore doubled.

Such are the principal defects of the present system of managing the labor expended on town roads. But it is much easier to discover and to expose, than to remove them. In the following plan the writer has endeavored to combine the most valuable features of the various European systems, and to adapt them to our peculiar institutions.

In each State, a general legislative act should establish all the details of construction, and determine definitely "What a road ought to be," in accordance with the theory and practice of the best engineers. Surveys should be made of all the leading roads, and plans and profiles of them prepared, so that it might be at once seen in what way their lines could be most efficiently and cheaply improved.

The personal labor and commutation system should be entirely abolished. If the town-meeting would vote a tax in money of *half* the amount now levied in days' work, its expenditure under the supervision to be presently described, would produce a result superior to the present one. When the road is a great thoroughfare, extending far beyond the town, it would be unjust to levy upon it all the expense; and a county tax, or, in extreme cases, a state appropriation, should supply what might be necessary.

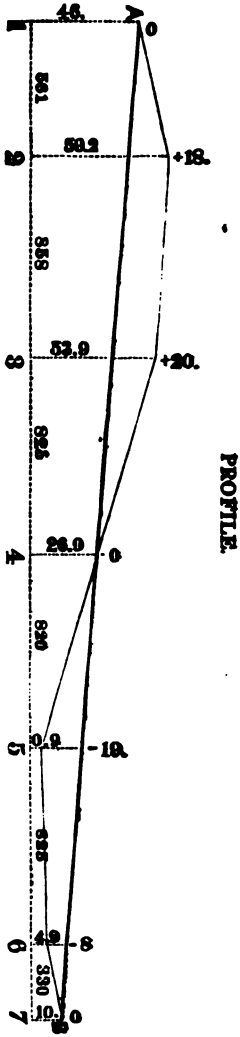
In regulating the expenditure of the money raised, the fundamental principle, dictated by the truest and most

far-sighted economy, should be *to sacrifice a portion of the resources of the road to ensure the good employment of the remainder.* The justice of this principle needs no argument; its best mode of application is the only difficulty. The first step should be to place the repairs of the roads under the charge of a professional Road-maker of science and experience. On his skill will depend the condition of the roads, more than on local circumstances or expenditures. His qualifications should be tested by a competent board of examiners, if he should not have received special instructions in the requisite knowledge, such as might well form a peculiar department of education in our Colleges and Normal schools. As each town by itself could not afford to employ a competent person, a number of them (more or less according to their wealth and the importance of the roads within their bounds) should unite in an association for that purpose.

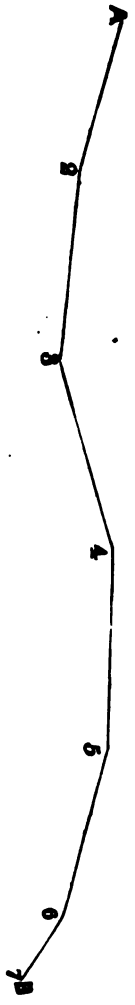
The engineer thus appointed should choose, in each township, an active, industrious man, of ordinary education, to act as his deputy in making the expenditures in that town, and as foreman of the laborers employed during the season of active labor on the roads. This deputy might be busily and profitably employed during the entire remainder of the year, in constantly passing over in due rotation the whole line of road under his care, and making, himself, the slight repairs which the continual wear and tear of the traffic would render necessary. If taken in time, he himself could perform them; but if left unattended to, *as is usual*, till the season of general repairs, the deterioration would increase in a geometrical ratio, and perhaps cause an accident to a traveller, which would subject the town to damages tenfold the cost of repairs.

The laborers hired by the deputy in each town should be employed by piece-work as far as is possible. This can be carried out to a great extent, when the superintendent is competent to measure accurately the various descriptions of work, and to estimate their comparative difficulty. When the work cannot be properly executed by portions allotted to one man, it may be taken by gangs of four or five, who should form their own associations, make a common bargain, and divide the pay. In work not susceptible of definite calculation as to quantity or quality, and in such only, day-labor may be resorted to under a continual and vigilant superintendence.

In such a system as has been here sketched, the money-tax would be found to be not only more equitable than the personal-labor system, but even less burdensome. None of it would be wasted; and those who had skill and strength for road-work would receive back, in wages, more than their share of it; those who were skilful in other work might remain at that which was most profitable to them, and pay only their simple share of the road-tax, not double, as when they now commute; and the only losers by the change would be the indolent, who were useless under the old system, but under this, would be obliged to contribute their share; while great gain in every way would ensue to the community at large. The subject urgently demands legislative attention.



PROFILE.



PLAN.

APPENDIX.

(Referred to on Page 117.)

CALCULATION OF EXCAVATION AND EMBANKMENT.

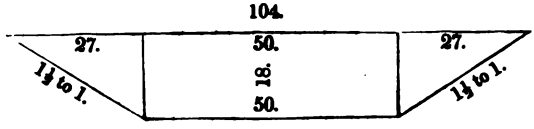
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Station.	Distance.	Height of ground above datum line.	Rise or fall for each distance.	Height of grade above datum.	Cut. +	Fill. —	End Areas.	Excavation. Cubic feet.	Embankment Cubic feet.
1		46.0		46.0	0		0		
2	561	59.2	— 4.8	41.2	18		1386	388,773	
3	858	53.9	— 7.3	33.9	20		1600	1,280,994	
4	825	26.9	— 7.0	26.9	0	0	0	660,000	
5	820	0.9	— 7.0	19.9		19	1672		685,520
6	825	4.9	— 7.0	12.9		8	528		907,500
7	330	10.0	— 2.9	10.		0	0		87,120
	4219		36.0					2,329,767	1,680,140

In the above tabular view, the first seven columns are transferred from page 116. The remaining columns of areas and cubical contents are filled up by the following calculations, assuming at 50 feet the width of road-bed; which will be the bottom of a cutting, or the top of an embankment, at a height just sufficient to equalize the elevations and depressions of the final transverse profile of the surface of the road. The side-slopes of the excavations are supposed to be $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 1, and those of the embankments 2 to 1. We are now prepared to take up, in turn, each of the four usual methods of calculation.

1. CALCULATION BY AVERAGING END-AREAS.

At station 1 there is neither cutting nor filling. The end-area in column 8, opposite that station, is therefore 0.

Fig. 146.

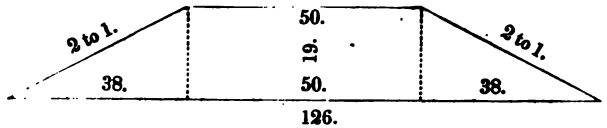


At station 2, the cross-section of the excavation is shown in the figure. The "Distances out" of the side-slopes are $1\frac{1}{2} \times 18 = 27$ feet. The top width is therefore $27 + 50 + 27 = 104$ feet. The area equals $\frac{104 + 50}{2} \times 18 = 1386$; or otherwise, since the two triangular portions equal a rectangle of the same base and height as one of them, the area $= (50 + 1\frac{1}{2} \times 18) \times 18 = 1386$.

At station 3, the area equals $(50 + 1\frac{1}{2} \times 20) \times 20 = 1600$.

At station 4, the Excavation ends, or "runs out," and the area $= 0$.

Fig. 147.



At station 5, the section of the embankment is shaped as in the figure, and has an area $= (50 + 2 \times 19) \times 19 = 1672$.

At station 6, the area $= (50 + 2 \times 8) \times 8 = 528$.

At station 7, the area $= 0$.

The column of *End-Areas* is thus filled.

The *Cubical Contents* are next to be calculated.

The mass between stations 1 and 2, has an area of 0 at one end, and of 1386 at the other, and is 561 feet long. Its contents, by the method which we now employ, will equal the average of the two areas, multiplied by the length; i. e., $\frac{0 + 1386}{2} \times 561 = 388{,}773$ cubic feet.

The contents of the second mass, that between 2 and 3, equals $\frac{1386 + 1600}{2} \times 858 = 1{,}280{,}994$ cubic feet.

The third mass $= \frac{1600 + 0}{2} \times 825 = 660{,}000$ cubic feet.

Here the excavation ends, and the embankment begins.

The fourth mass $= \frac{0 + 1672}{2} \times 820 = 685{,}520$ cubic feet.

The fifth mass $= \frac{1672 + 528}{2} \times 825 = 907{,}500$ cubic feet.

The sixth mass $= \frac{528 + 0}{2} \times 330 = 87{,}120$ cubic feet.

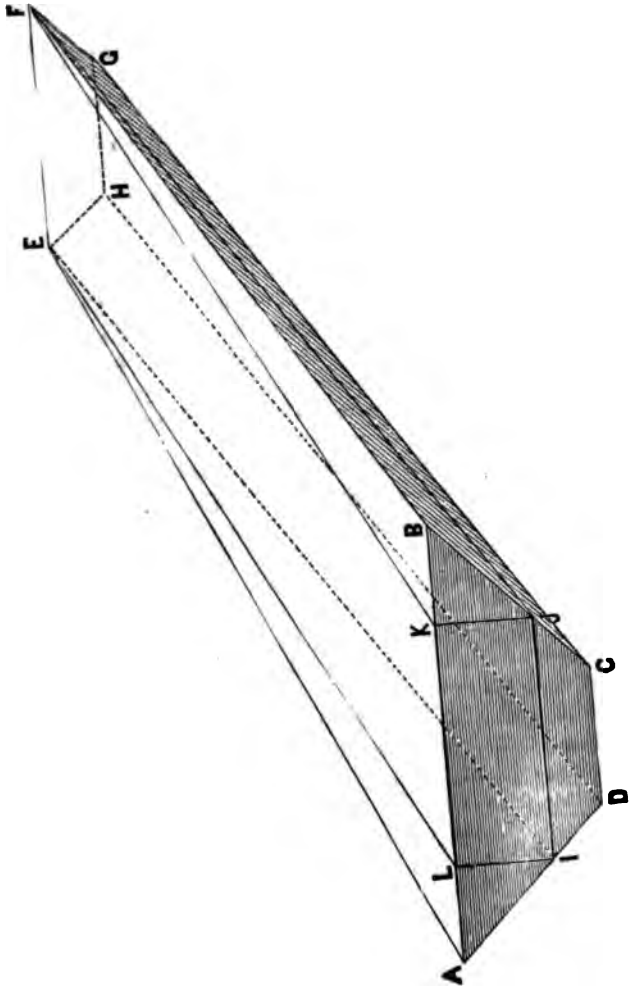
These results, being in cubic feet, should be divided by 27, to reduce them to *cubic yards*, the denomination in which estimates are made and contractors paid. This reduction would be facilitated, if the measuring tapes and rods were divided into yards and their decimal parts; or if the distances of the stations were always some multiple of 54 feet.

The results thus obtained, by averaging the end-areas, exceed the correct amount, as will appear from an inspection of the figure on the following page, from which may also be deduced the correction to be applied.

This figure presents a perspective view of a tapering prismoidal mass, such as is an excavation of unequal size at its two extremities; ABCD being the area of its largest end, and EFGH of its smallest. Conceive a plane, parallel to the base of the cutting CDHG, to be passed through EF. It would cut the larger end in the line IJ, leaving below it a quadrangular prism, with equal bases EFGH and CDIJ. Subdivide the remaining figure, by raising the vertical lines IL and JK, and passing a plane through IL and E, and another through JK and F. The interior body thus formed appears wedge-shaped, but is a triangular prism, equal to half the quadrangular prism, which has IJKL for base, and IE or JF for height. There remain two triangular pyramids,—one with base ALI and vertex E, and the other with base BJK and vertex F.

The prismoid being thus dissected, the contents of the quadrangular and of the triangular prisms would be correctly obtained by multiplying the sum of the bases or end-areas by *one-half* the

Fig. 148.



length; but to find the contents of the pyramids, their bases should be multiplied by *one-third* of their length. The method of calculation which we have employed multiplies the sum of the end-areas of the original figure, (which is composed of the prisms and pyramids which we are discussing) by one-half the length; and therefore gives a result too large by the difference between a half and a third—*i. e.*, by a sixth—of the product of the bases of the pyramids by their length: *i. e.*, $\frac{JK \times KB + IL \times LA}{2} \times \frac{JF}{6}$.

Representing by d the difference of the depths of the end cuttings, the ratio of the side-slopes by s to 1, and the length of the cutting or filling by l, the error in excess will be

$$\frac{d \times sd + d \times sd}{2} \times \frac{l}{6} = \frac{sd^2 l}{6}.$$

If this be calculated for each mass, and subtracted from the results previously obtained by averaging end-areas, the remainder will equal the result obtained by the correct prismoidal formula, to be hereafter examined. Thus, for the mass between stations 1 and 2, the correction is $\frac{1\frac{1}{2} \times 18^2 \times 561}{6} = 45{,}441$,—giving a remainder $= 388{,}773 - 45{,}441 = 343{,}332$, which is the correct amount. The original and corrected amounts are presented below in a tabular form:

ORIGINAL AMOUNTS.		CORRECTIONS.			CORRECTED AMOUNTS.	
Excavation.	Embankment.	Formulæ.	Amounts.		Excavation.	Embankment.
388,773		$\frac{1\frac{1}{2} \times 18^2 \times 561}{6}$	45,441		343,332	
1,280,994		$\frac{1\frac{1}{2} \times 9^2 \times 858}{6}$	858		1,280,136	
669,000		$\frac{1\frac{1}{2} \times 20^2 \times 825}{6}$	82,500		577,500	
	685,520	$\frac{2 \times 19^2 \times 820}{6}$		98,673		586,847
	907,500	$\frac{2 \times 11_2 \times 825}{6}$		33,275		874,225
	87,120	$\frac{2 \times 8^2 \times 330}{6}$		7,040		80,080
2,329,767	1,680,140		128,799	138,988	2,200,968	1,541.152

We thus see that the method of calculating excavation and embankment by averaging the end-areas, though very generally used,

is so incorrect that in the present example its excess over the truth is nearly 130,000 cubic feet in the excavation, and 140,000 in the embankment, or 270,000 in the whole, equal to 10,000 cubic yards. If this method had been used in estimating the payment due to a contractor at 10 cents per yard, he would have been consequently overpaid $1000.

2. CALCULATION BY THE MIDDLE AREAS.

The second method of calculation is to deduce the *middle area* of each prismoidal mass from the arithmetical mean of the extreme heights, and multiply it by the length.

Applying this method to the preceding example, and adopting the columns 1, 2, 6, and 7 of the table on page 116, we obtain the results exhibited in the last three columns of the following table.

Station.	Distance.	Cut.	Fill.	Mean Heights.	Middle Areas.	Excavation.	Embankment.
1		0		9	571.5	320,611	
2	561	18.		19	1491.5	1,279,707	
3	858	20.		10	650.	536,250	
4	825	0	0	9.5	655.5		537,510
5	820		19.	13.5	1039.5		857,587
6	825		8.	4	232.		76,560
7	330		0.				
						2,136,568	1,471,657

The following formulæ show the method of obtaining the "middle areas" in the sixth column of the above table.

Mean height = 9. Middle area = $(50+1\frac{1}{2}\times 9)\times 9 = 571.5$

" " = 19. " " = $(50+1\frac{1}{2}\times 19)\times 19 = 1491.5$

" " = 10. " " = $(50+1\frac{1}{2}\times 10)\times 10 = 650.$

" " = 9.5 " " = $(50+2\times 9.5)\times 9.5 = 655.5$

" " = 13.5 " " = $(50+2\times 13.5)\times 13.5 = 1039.5$

" " = 4. " " = $(50+2\times 4)\times 4 = 232.$

The cubical contents are then calculated as follows:

571.5 × 561 = 320,611.5 cubic feet.

1491.5 × 858 = 1,279,707. " "

650. × 825 = 536,250. " "

655.5 × 820 = 537,510. " "

1039.5 × 825 = 857,587.5 " "

232. × 330 = 76,560. " "

The results thus obtained are too small; their deficiency being equal to just half the excess of the first method. This will appear by again referring to the figure on page 324. It will be seen that the contents of the prisms in that figure will be correctly given by this method, but that the deficiency is in the pyramids. Calling their heights in the middle $\frac{d}{2}$; their widths will be $s\frac{d}{2}$; their middle areas $s\frac{d^2}{8}$; the contents of one of them $sl\frac{d^2}{8}$; and of the two $sl\frac{d^2}{4}$. But the true contents of the pyramids is $2\left(\frac{d \times sd}{2} \times \frac{l}{3}\right) = sl\frac{d^2}{3}$; and the deficiency of the method of middle areas is therefore the difference between a third and a fourth—*i. e.* a twelfth—of the product of the bases of the pyramids by their length, or $\frac{sd^2l}{12}$. Corrections thus calculated, and added to the above results, would make them coincide with the true ones given by the prismoidal formula, which we will next consider.

3. CALCULATION BY THE PRISMOIDAL FORMULA.

The mass, of which the volume is demanded, is a true *Prismoid*, and its correct contents will therefore be given by the well-known prismoidal formula, which is as follows:

Find the area of each end of the mass, and also the middle area corresponding to the arithmetical mean of the heights of the two ends. Add together the area of each end, and four times the middle area. Multiply the sum by the length, and divide the product by 6. The quotient will be the true cubic contents required.

Applying this method to the original example, and adopting columns 1, 2, 6, 7, 8, from page 321, and the middle areas from page 326, we may prepare the following table:

Station.	Distance.	Cut.	Fill.	End Areas.	Middle Areas.	Excavation.	Embankment.
1		0		0	571.5	343,332	
2	561	18		1386	1491.5	1,280,136	
3	858	20		1600	650.	577,500	
4	825	0	0	0	655.5		586,847
5	820		19	1672	1039.5		874,225
6	825		8	528	232.		80,080
7	330		0	0			
						2,200,968	1,541,152
						1,541,152	
						659,816	

The manner of obtaining the amounts in the last two columns is as follows:

$$(0 + 1386 + 571.5 \times 4) \times \frac{561}{6} = 343,332.$$

$$(1386 + 1600 + 1491.5 \times 4) \times \frac{858}{6} = 1,280,136.$$

$$(1600 + 0 + 650 \times 4) \times \frac{825}{6} = 577,500.$$

$$(0 + 1672 + 655.5 \times 4) \times \frac{820}{6} = 586,847.$$

$$(1672 + 528 + 1039.5 \times 4) \times \frac{825}{6} = 874,225.$$

$$(528 + 0 + 232 \times 4) \times \frac{330}{6} = 80,080.$$

Whatever the shape of the mass of earth intercepted between two parallel cross-sections, it may be divided into prisms, pyramids, wedges, or frustra of pyramids, to all which, and therefore to the entire mass, the prismoidal formula may be correctly applied.*

The labor of the calculation may be much lessened by the use of tables, such as those of Macneill, Bidder, Fourier, Johnson, &c., when the base and slopes are such as can be found in them.

The prismoidal formula may be readily deduced from the dissected figure on page 324. Call the height of the lesser end h; of the greater end g; the breadth of base b; the ratio of the side-slopes to unity s; and the length l. Then we may proceed thus:

* Journal of the Franklin Institute, January and June, 1840.

Area of the smaller end EFGH $= h(b + sh) = bh + sh^2$.

$\therefore$ Content of the lower prism $= (bh + sh^2) \times l$, . . . [A]

Area of rectangle IJKL $= (b + 2sh)(g - h) = bg + 2sgh - bh - 2sh^2$.

$\therefore$ Content of the upper prism $= (bg + 2sgh - bh - 2sh^2) \times \frac{l}{2}$, [B]

Bases of the two pyramids $= (g - h) \times s(g - h) = sg^2 - 2sgh + sh^2$.

$\therefore$ Contents of the pyramids $(sg^2 - 2sgh + sh^2) \times \frac{l}{3}$, . . [C]

Uniting the expressions for the partial contents [A], [B], and [C], and reducing them to a common denominator, we get for the contents of the prismoid,

$$(6bh + 6sh^2 + 3bg + 6sgh - 3bh - 6sh^2 + 2sg^2 - 4sgh + 2sh^2) \times \frac{l}{6}$$

$$= (3bh + 3bg + 2sgh + 2sg^2 + 2sh^2) \times \frac{l}{6} \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots \text{[D].}$$

This expression may be decomposed into the following:

$$(bh + sh^2 + bg + sg^2 + 2bg + 2bh + 2sgh + sg^2 + sh^2) \times \frac{l}{6}.$$

The first two terms express the area of the smaller end of the prismoid, and the next two the area of the larger end. The remaining five terms may be transformed into

$$4\left(\frac{b(g+h)}{2} + s\frac{(g+h)^2}{4}\right) = 4\left[\frac{g+h}{2} \times \left(b + s \cdot \frac{g+h}{2}\right)\right]$$

which is the expression for 4 times the middle area; thus giving the *prismoidal formula*.

The formula [D], giving the contents of the prismoid, may be transformed into another, more convenient for calculation than the usual prismoidal one. By separation into factors, it becomes,

$$[2s(gh + g^2 + h^2) + 3b(h + g)] \times \frac{l}{6} \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots \text{[E]}$$

which gives the following

RULE.

Add together the squares of the heights at each end, and their product. Multiply the sum by twice the ratio of the side-slopes to unity. Reserve the product. Multiply the sum of the heights by

three times the breadth of base, and add the product to the reserved product. Multiply their sum by the length or distance between the two cross-sections, and divide by six.

Applying the rule to the mass between stations 2 and 3, we find $g = 20$, $h = 18$, $b = 50$, $s = 1\frac{1}{2}$, $l = 858$, and the calculation is made thus:

$$\begin{aligned}
18^2 &= 324 \\
20^2 &= 400 \\
18 \times 20 &= 360 \\
\hline
1084 &\times 2 \times 1\tfrac{1}{2} = 3252 \\
\hline
18 & \\
20 & \\
\hline
38 &\times 3 \times 50 = 5700 \\
\hline
& 8952 \\
& 858 \\
\hline
& 6)\ 7680816 \\
\text{Cubical contents} &= \quad 1280136
\end{aligned}$$

Formula [E] may be also transformed into the following formulæ, either of which is more convenient for calculation than the usual prismoidal formula.

$$[2s\,(g-h)^2 + 3b\,(g+h) + 6sgh] \times \frac{l}{6} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad [F]$$

or $$[2s\,(g+h)^2 + 3b\,(g+h) - 2sgh] \times \frac{l}{6} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad [G]$$

When the side-slopes are $1\frac{1}{2}$ *to* 1, the preceding formulæ are much simplified, for $2s = 3$, and the factor *three* may therefore be eliminated from each term, and one-half, instead of one-sixth, of the length be used as a multiplier.

Formula [G] then becomes

$$[(g+h)^2 + b\,(g+h) - gh] \times \frac{l}{2} =$$

$$= [(b+g+h)\,(g+h) - gh] \times \frac{l}{2}. \quad . \quad . \quad [H]$$

This formul gives the following

RULE.

When the side-slopes are $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 1, add together the breadth of base and the heights at each end of the mass. Multiply this sum by the sum of the two heights. From the product subtract the product of the two heights. Multiply the remainder by half the length.

The calculation of the preceding example will then be made thus:

$$\begin{array}{rrrr} 50 & & & \\ 18 & 18 & & \\ 20 & 20 & & \\ \hline 88 & \times\ 38 & = & 3344 \\ 18 & \times\ 20 & = & 360 \\ \hline & & & 2984 \\ 858 & \div\ 2 & = & 429 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Cubical contents = 1,280,136

When the height and therefore area at one end = 0, h vanishes from the formula [E], which thus becomes

$$(2sg^2 + 3bg) \times \frac{l}{6} = (2sg + 3b)\,\frac{gl}{6} \quad \ldots\ldots \text{[I]}$$

giving the following

RULE.

Add the product of the height by twice the slope to three times the breadth of base. Multiply the sum by the height, and that product by the length, and divide the product by six.

The calculation of the cubical contents of the mass between stations 1 and 2 will accordingly be thus made:

$$\begin{array}{rrr} 2 \times 1\frac{1}{2} \times 18 & = & 54 \\ 3 \times 50 & = & 150 \\ \hline & & 204 \\ & & 18 \\ \hline & & 3672 \\ & & 561 \\ \hline & & 6)\ 2059992 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Cubical contents = 343332

4. CALCULATION BY MEAN PROPORTIONALS.

A fourth method, called that of "Mean proportionals," is sometimes, though very improperly employed. It assumes implicitly that the mass is a frustum of a pyramid, *i. e.* that all its sides, if produced, would intersect in one vertex, a supposition which would very seldom be perfectly true. On this assumption the following is the *Rule*.

Add together the areas of the two ends, and a mean proportional between them, (found by extracting the square root of their product) and multiply the sum of these three areas by the length of the frustum, and divide the product by three. The result is always much less than the truth, for it treats as pyramids, or thirds of prisms, the wedge-shaped pieces which are really halves of prisms. It is farthest from the truth when one of the areas $= 0$.

5. IRREGULAR CROSS-SECTIONS.

The cross-section of the ground, at right angles to the direction of the road, has been assumed to be level. But the height of the surface of the ground usually varies considerably within the width to be occupied by the future road, and renders necessary the taking of levels not merely on the centre line, but also on the sides at the points in which the side-slopes, of the cuttings or fillings of the road, would intersect the surface of the ground. Other intermediate levels are also sometimes required.

The height of the ground above the grade line of the road on the centre line is called the "centre cutting;" and the heights at the intersection of the side-slopes of the cuttings with the ground on each side of any station are called the "right cutting" and "left cutting;" abbreviated into C. C. R. C. L. C.

In embankments, the corresponding heights are called "centre bank," "right bank," and "left bank;" usually written C. B. R. B. L. B.

For greater accuracy, these cross-sections should be taken at distances of 100 feet. If an abrupt change in the level of the ground requires a levelling between these regular stations, it is called an "intermediate" one.

The following table presents various examples of irregular cross-

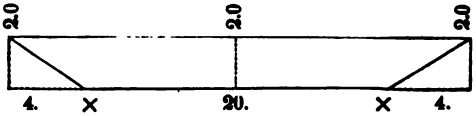
sections. The slopes are assumed to be 2 to 1, and the width of the road to be 20 feet.

Station.	Distance.	L. C.	C. C.	R. C.	L. B.	C. B.	R. B.	End Areas Excavation.	End Areas Embankment.
1		0	0	0				0	
2	100	2.0	2.0	2.0				48.	
3	100	3.0	2.6	3.4				74.	
4	100	3.0		2.0				62.	
Inter.	60	1.0	0	0				5.	0
5	40				0	0	2.0	0	10.
6	100				3.0	3.0	6.0		121.
7	100				0	0	0		0

We will proceed to sketch and note each cross-section, writing each height vertically in its appropriate place, and show how its area is obtained by dividing it into triangles, of which the base and height are known.

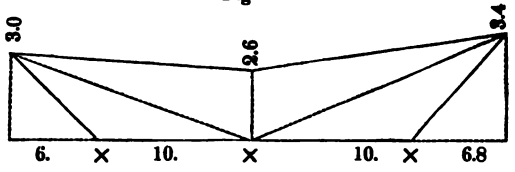
At station 1 the cutting begins, with an area = 0.

Fig. 149.



At station 2, Fig. 149, the section is of uniform depth, and its area is simply $(20 + 2 \times 2) \times 2.0 = 48$.

Fig. 150.



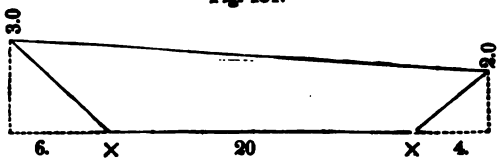
At station 3, Fig. 150, the lower left-hand triangle $= \frac{10 \times 3}{2} = 15.$

The lower right-hand triangle $= \frac{10 \times 3.4}{2} = 17.$

The two remaining triangles $= \frac{2.6 \times (6+10+10+6.8)}{2} = 42.64$

The entire area therefore - - - = 74.64

Fig. 151.



At station 4, only two levels were thought necessary, viz. those of the outside cuttings, without the centre one. To find the area, consider the figure as a trapezoid, minus the right-angled triangles at each end.

$$\text{Trapezoid} = (6 + 20 + 4) \times \frac{2. + 3.}{2} = 75.$$

$$\text{Left-hand triangle } \frac{6 \times 3}{2} = -9$$

$$\text{Right-hand triangle } \frac{4 \times 2}{2} = -4$$

$$-13. \quad -13$$

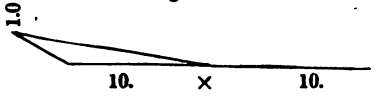
$$\text{Area of cross-section, - - - } 62.$$

A simple algebraic expression for this area may be found thus: call the breadth of base b, the outside cuttings d and e, the ratio of side-slopes to unity s. The area will be

$$\frac{(b + sd + se)(d + e)}{2} - \frac{sd^2}{2} - \frac{se^2}{2} = b\,\frac{d + e}{2} + sde.$$

The above example would then be $20 \times \frac{5}{2} + 2 \times 3 \times 2 = 50 + 12 = 62$.

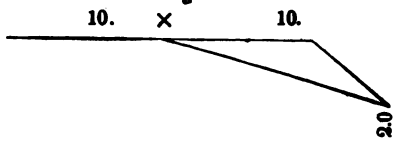
Fig. 152.



Between stations 4 and 5, at 60 feet from the former, an intermediate cross-section was made necessary, by the cutting "running out" on one side. The area, Fig. 152, is only the single triangle $\frac{10 \times 1.0}{2} = 5$.

At station 5, 40 feet farther, the cutting entirely runs out, and its area at that point becomes 0. The embankment had commenced.

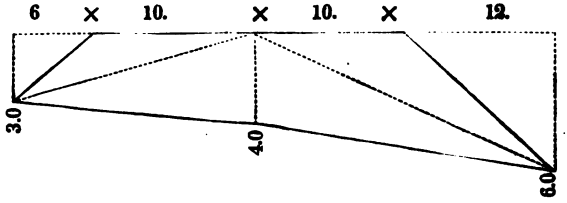
Fig. 153.



with area 0, at the preceding intermediate station, and at this station its area, Fig. 153, is $\frac{10 \times 2}{2} = 10$.

At station 6, the cross-section resembles that at station 3, inverted, and is calculated in the same manner by division into triangles, as is shown in Fig. 154.

Fig. 154.



Left-hand triangle - $= \frac{10 \times 3}{2}$ = 15.

Right-hand triangle - $= \frac{10 \times 6}{2}$ = 30.

Two remaining triangles $= \frac{4 \times (6 + 10 + 10 + 12)}{2}$ = 76.

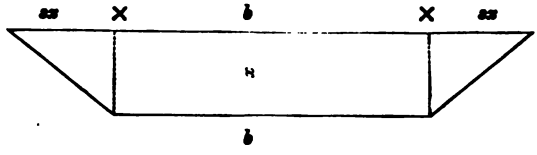
Entire area, - - - - = 121.

At station 7, the embankment runs out, and the area = 0.

MEAN HEIGHTS.

To apply the prismoidal formula to cases of irregular cross-sections, it is necessary to calculate the mean heights of these cross-sections, to be subsequently averaged together to find the middle height, which produces the middle area. The following *problem* is therefore to be solved: Given the area of any irregular section, required the mean height which would produce the same area, the base and slopes remaining the same.

Fig. 155.



Let a represent the given area; b the breadth of base, or road-bed; s, the ratio of side-slopes to unity; and x the mean height required.

Then $a = sx^2 + bx$; by solving which equation we obtain

$$x = \sqrt{\left[\frac{a}{s} + \left(\frac{b}{2s}\right)^2\right]} - \frac{b}{2s}.$$

In all the preceding examples, $\frac{b}{2s} = \frac{20}{2 \times 2} = 5$.

At station 3, (p. 333) $a = 74.6$ $\therefore x = \sqrt{\left(\frac{74.6}{2} + 5^2\right)} - 5 =$ $\sqrt{62.3} - 5 = 7.89 - 5 = 2.89$. If this mean height be verified, it will be found to produce the original area. Thus substituting it in the above expression for a, we obtain $2 \times 2.89^2 + 20 \times 2.89 = 74.6$.

A similar process will give the mean heights for the remaining cross-sections. They may then be employed, as were the uniform heights in the original examples, to find the end areas, middle heights, and middle areas required by the prismoidal formula; or as the values of g and h in the easier formulæ, which have been therefrom deduced.

FINIS.



TE 145 .G47
A manual of the principles and
Stanford University Libraries
3 6105 041 646 790
TE
145
G47

JAN 20 1987
OCT 19 1987

Stanford University Library
Stanford, California

In order that others may use this book, please return it as soon as possible, but not later than the date due.

